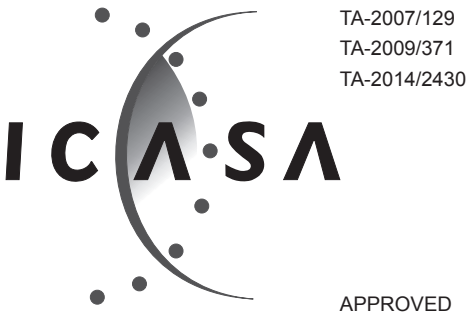
CHEVROLET CAPTIVA OWNERS HANDBOOK

CHEVROLET



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Contents



TA-2007/129
TA-2009/371
TA-2014/2430

Introduction 2
In Brief 5
Keys 25
Seats and Restraints 44
Storage 86
Instruments and Controls 91
Lighting 122
Infotainment System 128
Climate Controls 165
Driving and Operating 174
Vehicle Care 226
Service and Maintenance 296
Technical Data 304
Customer Information 308
Index 310

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Introduction



The names, logos, emblems, slogans, vehicle model names, and vehicle body designs appearing in this manual including, but not limited to, GM, the GM logo, CHEVROLET, the CHEVROLET Emblem, and CAPTIVA are trademarks and/or service marks of General Motors LLC, its subsidiaries, affiliates, or licensors.

This manual describes features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle because they are options that you did not purchase, the feature/application may not be available in the region, or due to changes subsequent to the printing of this owner manual. Please refer to the purchase documentation relating to your specific vehicle to confirm each of the features found on your vehicle.

You may contact your dealer for further queries.

Keep this manual in the vehicle for quick reference.

Danger, Warning, and Caution

Warning messages found on vehicle labels and in this manual describe hazards and what to do to avoid or reduce them.

⚠ Danger

Danger indicates a hazard with a high level of risk which will result in serious injury or death.

⚠ Warning

Warning indicates a hazard that could result in injury or death.

Caution

Caution indicates a hazard that could result in property or vehicle damage.



A circle with a slash through it is a safety symbol which means “Do Not,” “Do not do this,” or “Do not let this happen.”

Symbols

The vehicle has components and labels that use symbols instead of text. Symbols are shown along with the text describing the operation or information relating to a specific component, control, message, gauge, or indicator.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Shown when the owner manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when the service manual has additional instructions or information.

: Shown when there is more information on another page — "see page."

Vehicle Symbol Chart

Here are some additional symbols that may be found on the vehicle and what they mean. For more information on the symbol, refer to the Index.

: Airbag Readiness Light

: Air Conditioning

: Antilock Brake System (ABS)

: Brake System Warning Light

: Charging System

: Cruise Control

: Do Not Puncture

: Do Not Service

: Engine Coolant Temperature

: Exterior Lamps

: Flame/Fire Prohibited

: Fuel Gauge

: Fuses

: Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer

: LATCH System Child Restraints

: Malfunction Indicator Lamp

: Oil Pressure

: Power

: Safety Belt Reminders

: Traction Control

: Under Pressure

: Windshield Washer Fluid

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

✍ NOTES

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

In Brief

Instrument Panel
Instrument Panel 6

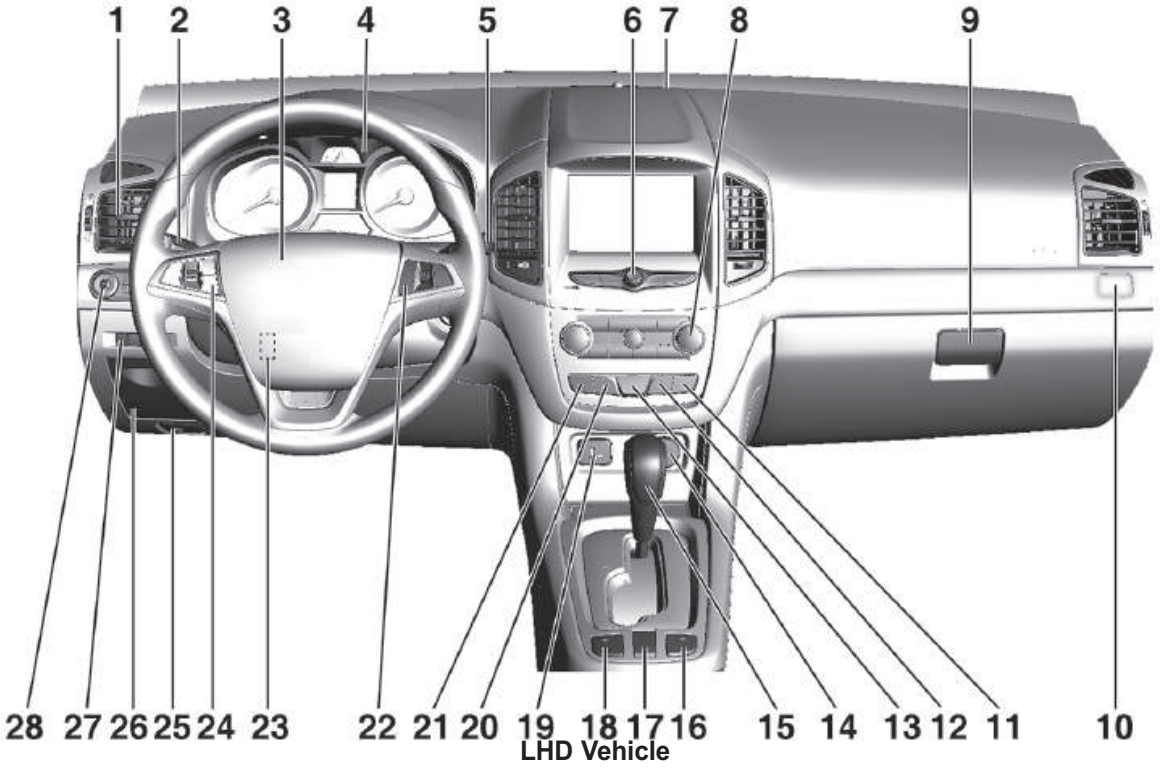
Initial Drive Information
Initial Drive Information 9
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 9
Door Locks 10
Liftgate 11
Windows 11
Seat Adjustment 12
Second Row Seats 14
Third Row Seats 14
Heated Seats 14
Head Restraint Adjustment 15
Safety Belts 15
Mirror Adjustment 15
Steering Wheel Adjustment 16
Interior Lighting 17
Exterior Lighting 18
Windshield Wiper/Washer 18
Climate Controls 19
Transmission 20

Vehicle Features
Steering Wheel Controls 21
Cruise Control 21
Power Outlets 22
Sunroof 22

Performance and Maintenance
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 23
Tire Pressure Monitor 23
Engine Oil Life System 23
Driving for Better Fuel Economy 24

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel

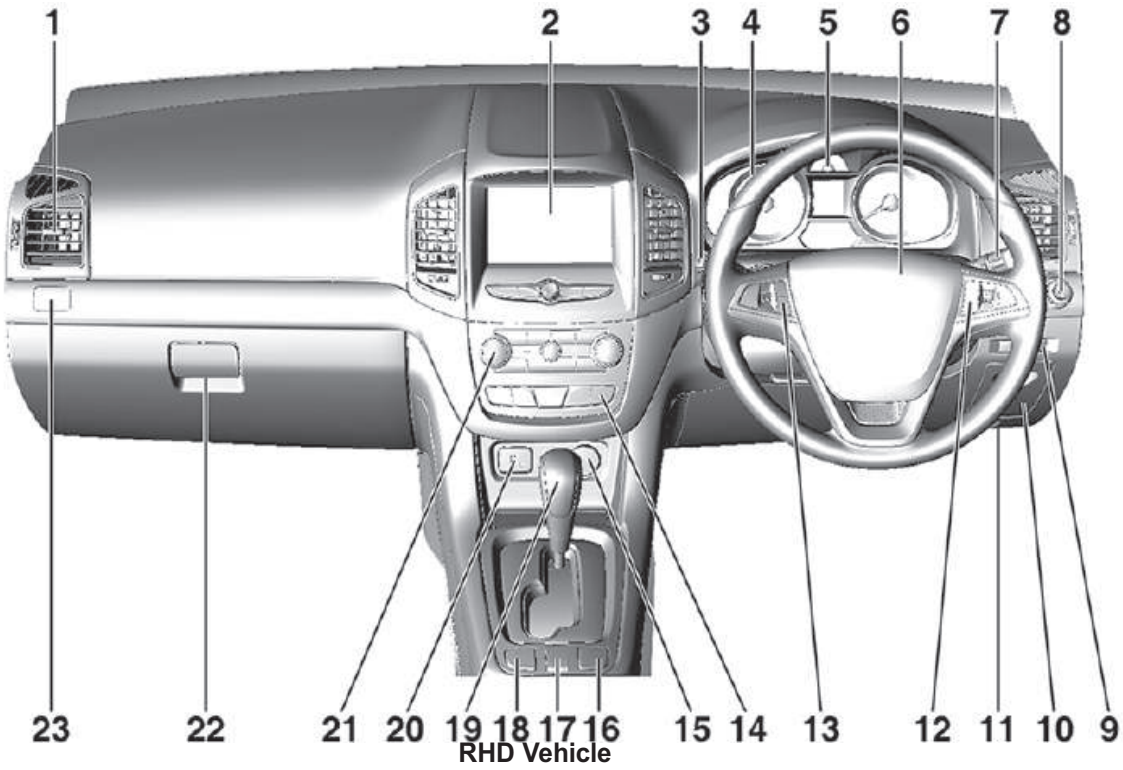


LHD Vehicle

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. *Air Vents* ⇨ *171*.
2. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *122*.
3. *Horn* ⇨ *93*.
4. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *98*.
5. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *93*.
6. *Overview* ⇨ *131*.
7. *Vehicle Alarm System (key)* ⇨ *35* or *Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)* ⇨ *35*.
8. *Climate Control Systems* ⇨ *165.Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *167*.
9. *Glove Box* ⇨ *86*.
10. *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *102*.
11. *Fuel Economy Mode* ⇨ *198*.
12. *Ultrasonic Parking Assist* ⇨ *211*. *Rear Climate Control System* ⇨ *170*.
13. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *124*.
14. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *95*.
15. *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *196*. *Manual Transmission* ⇨ *199*.
16. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *50*.
17. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*.
18. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *50*.
19. *USB Port* ⇨ *141*.
20. *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ *205*.
21. *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *109*.
22. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *92*.
23. *Steering Wheel Adjustment* ⇨ *92*.
24. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *207*.
25. *Hood* ⇨ *228*.
26. *Front Storage* ⇨ *86*.
27. *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *119*.
28. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *39.Headlamp Washer* ⇨ *95.Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *126*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



RHD Vehicle

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. *Air Vents* ⇨ *171*.
2. *Overview* ⇨ *131*.
3. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *122*.
4. *Instrument Cluster* ⇨ *98*.
5. *Fuel Gauge* ⇨ *101*.
6. *Horn* ⇨ *93*.
7. *Windshield Wiper/Washer* ⇨ *93*.
8. *Power Mirrors* ⇨ *39*.*Instrument Panel Illumination Control* ⇨ *126*, *Headlamp Range Adjustment* ⇨ *123*.
9. *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *119*.
10. *Front Storage* ⇨ *86*.
11. *Hood* ⇨ *228*.
12. *Steering Wheel Controls* ⇨ *92*.
13. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *207*.
14. *Fuel Economy Mode* ⇨ *198*, *Ultrasonic Parking Assist* ⇨ *211*, *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *124*, *Descent Control System (DCS)* ⇨ *205*, *Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light* ⇨ *109*.
15. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *95*.
16. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *50*.
17. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*.
18. *Heated Front Seats* ⇨ *50*.
19. *Automatic Transmission* ⇨ *196*.
20. *USB Port* ⇨ *141*.
21. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *167*.
22. *Glove Box* ⇨ *86*.
23. *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *102*.

Initial Drive Information

This section provides a brief overview about some of the important features that may or may not be on your specific vehicle.

For more detailed information, refer to each of the features which can be found later in this owner manual.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

The RKE transmitter functions work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Key Access RKE Transmitter

: Press to lock all the doors.

: Press once to unlock the all doors. If is pressed again within five seconds, all remaining doors unlock.

Keys ⇨ 25, *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key) ⇨ 27* or *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless) ⇨ 29*.



Keyless Access RKE Transmitter

: Press to lock all the doors. The hazard warning lamps will flash once and the anti-theft alarm system will be activated.

: Press once to unlock the doors. The hazard warning lamps flash twice and the vehicle alarm system will be deactivated. In some countries according to vehicle configuration, to unlock the driver door, press the button once. Immediately press the button within five seconds to unlock all doors.

The interior lamps may come on.

: Press and hold for about two seconds to initiate vehicle locator. Both the turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times.

Door Locks

To lock or unlock a door:

- From the inside, pull the door lock button to lock the door. Push the door lock button to unlock.
- From the outside, turn the key toward the front or rear of the vehicle.
- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to unlock.
- Press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter to lock.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The RKE transmitter functions will work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key)* ⇨ *27* or *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless)* ⇨ *29*.

Power Door Locks

: The power door lock switches are located on the front doors. This feature locks and unlocks all doors and the liftgate.

- Press the right side of the switch to lock the doors.
- Press the left side of the switch to unlock the doors.

Door Locks ⇨ *31*, *Power Door Locks* ⇨ *32*.

Liftgate

To lock the liftgate press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or press the power door lock switch.

To unlock the liftgate press or twice on the RKE transmitter or press the power door lock switch.

To open the liftgate, press the touch pad on the underside of the liftgate handle and pull up.

To close the liftgate, pull down using the handle and push down until it latches.

Liftgate ⇨ *33*.

Windows



The window switches for all doors are on the driver door. Each door also has a switch.

To open or close a window, press or pull up on the switch.

The power windows operate when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY.

Window Lockout

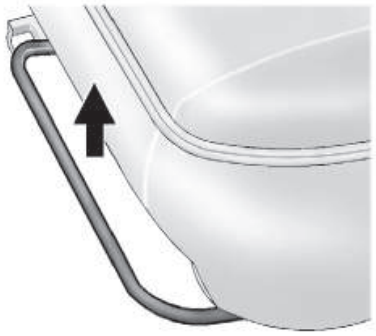
: The vehicle has a lockout feature to prevent rear seat passengers from operating the windows. Press the lockout button, located with the power window switches, to turn the feature on and off.

Windows ⇨ *41*, *Power Windows* ⇨ *41*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seat Adjustment

Manual Seats



To adjust a manual seat:

1. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Seat Height Adjuster



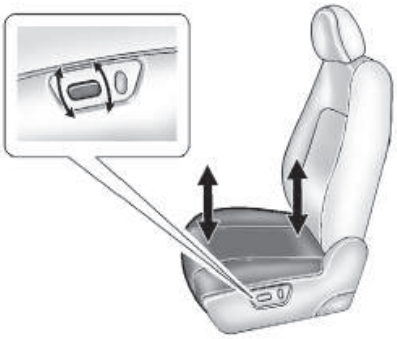
If equipped, move the lever up or down repeatedly to raise or lower the driver seat.*Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *47*.

Power Seats



If equipped, move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the horizontal control forward or rearward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the control up or down.

Power Seat Adjustment ⇨ *48*.

Lumbar Adjustment



If equipped, move the lever forward or rearward to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

Lumbar Adjustment ⇨ *48*.

Reclining Seatbacks

Manual Reclining Seatbacks



To recline a manual seatback:

1. Lift the lever.
2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



To adjust a power seatback, if equipped:

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Reclining Seatbacks ⇨ *48*.

Second Row Seats

The seatbacks can be folded for additional cargo space, or the seats can be tumbled for easy entry/exit to the third row seats. The seatbacks also recline.

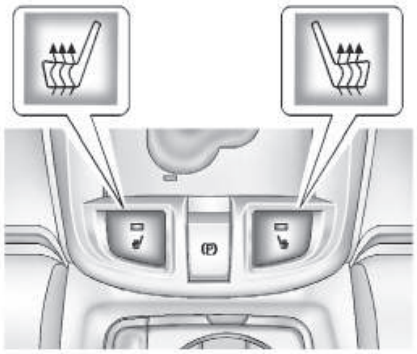
Rear Seats ⇨ *52*.

Third Row Seats

The third row seatbacks can be folded to increase cargo space.

Third Row Seats ⇨ *55*.

Heated Seats



If equipped, the controls are on the center console. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat. The indicator light on the button turns on when this feature is on. Press the button again to turn this feature off.

Heated Front Seats ⇨ *50*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

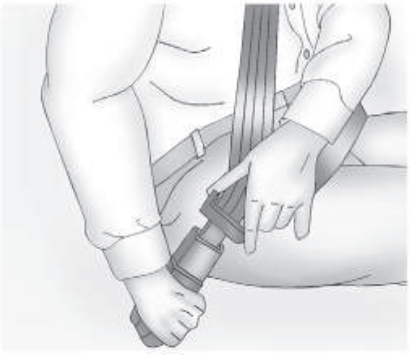
Head Restraint Adjustment

Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To achieve a comfortable seating position, change the seatback recline angle as little as necessary while keeping the seat and the head restraint height in the proper position.

Head Restraints ⇨ *45*. *Seat Adjustment* ⇨ *47*.

Safety Belts

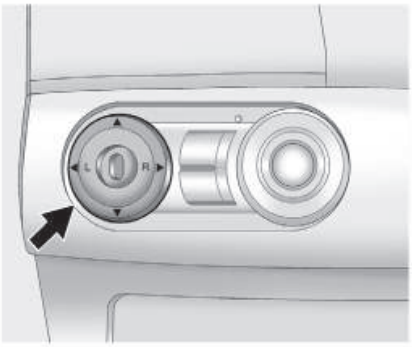


Refer to the following sections for important information on how to use safety belts properly:

- *Safety Belts* ⇨ *57*.
- *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* ⇨ *58*.
- *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *59*.
- *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *78*.

Mirror Adjustment

Exterior Mirrors



Controls for the outside power mirrors are on the driver side instrument panel.

To adjust:

1. Turn the knob to the L (Left) or R (Right) to choose a mirror.
2. Adjust each mirror so that the side and the area behind the vehicle can be seen.
3. Return the control to the center position so the mirror cannot be moved.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191* for more information.

The outside mirrors will work up to 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off. If a door is opened while the key is in the LOCK position or if taken out of the ignition, the mirror will not work.

Power Mirrors ⇨ *39*.

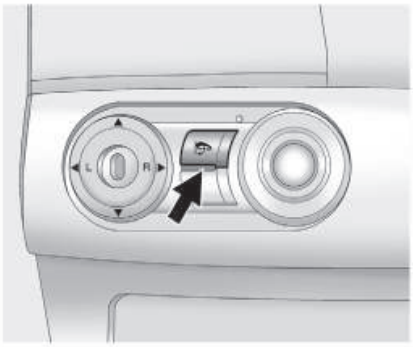
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Folding Mirrors

Manual

If equipped, manually fold the outside mirrors in to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, while sitting in the vehicle, pull the mirrors toward the vehicle. Push out, to return the mirrors to their original position.

Power



If equipped, press the folding mirror button to fold the outside mirrors flat against the side of the vehicle.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191* for more information.

Power to the folding outside mirrors will work up to 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off. Power to the folding outside mirrors will turn off if a door is opened while the key is in the LOCK position or taken out of the ignition.

Folding Mirrors ⇨ *39*.

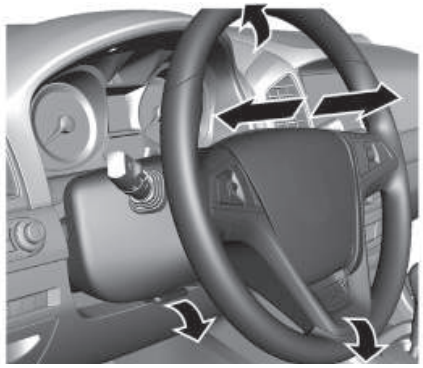
Interior Mirrors

To adjust the inside rearview mirror, hold the rearview mirror in the center and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

Push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

Manual Rearview Mirror ⇨ *40*.

Steering Wheel Adjustment



The vehicle has a tilt and telescoping wheel.

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lighting



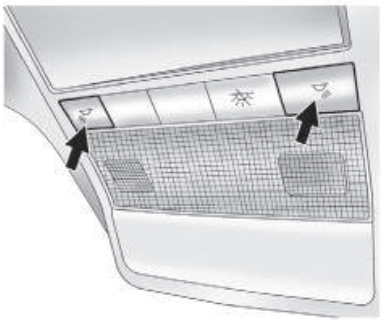
Press the button on the dome lamp to turn it on or off.

Dome Lamp Override



: Press to keep the dome lamps and other interior lamps turned off while any door is open. Press again to return it to the out position and the lamps automatically come on when any door is opened.

Reading Lamps



/ : Press the button near each lamp to turn the reading lamps on or off.

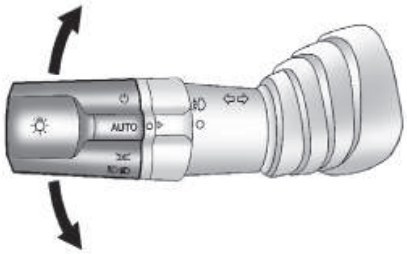
Dome Lamps ⇨ *126*.

Reading Lamps ⇨ *127*.

Instrument Panel Illumination Control ⇨ *126*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exterior Lighting



The turn signal lever located on the side of the steering column operates the exterior lamps.

Turn the exterior lamp control at the end of the lever to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns all the lamps off. Turning the headlamp control to the off position again will turn the automatic headlamps back on.

: Turns on the parking lamps, together with taillamps, license plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

: Turns on the headlamps, together with the taillamps, license plate lamps, parking lamps, and instrument panel lights

AUTO : If Equipped, the lamps turn on or off automatically depending on how dark it is outside.

To turn the automatic lamp control off, turn the exterior lamp control to ⏻. The control automatically returns to its original position when released.

Do not cover the sensor located on top of the instrument panel or the automatic headlamps will not work properly.

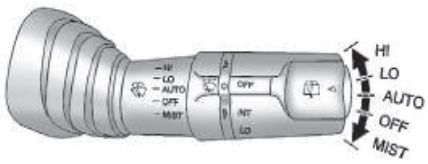
Exterior Lamp Controls ⇨ *122*.

Automatic Headlamp System ⇨ *124*.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

The windshield wiper lever is located on the side of the steering column. The ignition must be turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN to operate the windshield wipers.

The vehicle has automatic windshield wipers with Rainsense. The rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjusts the windshield wipers.



Move the lever to one of the following positions:

HI : For fast wipes.

LO : For slow wipes.

AUTO : Turns the windshield wipers on automatically.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by turning the band on the windshield wiper lever toward F or S.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACC/ACCESSORY while the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windshield wipers turn on once to check the system.

OFF : Turns the windshield wipers off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

MIST : For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down, and release. The lever automatically returns to its starting position.

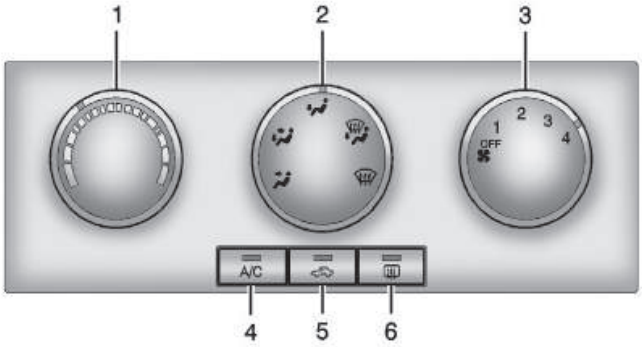
Windshield Washer

To use this feature the ignition must be turned to ON/RUN. Pull the windshield washer/wiper lever toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield.

Windshield Wiper/Washer ⇨ 93.
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ⇨ 94.

Climate Controls

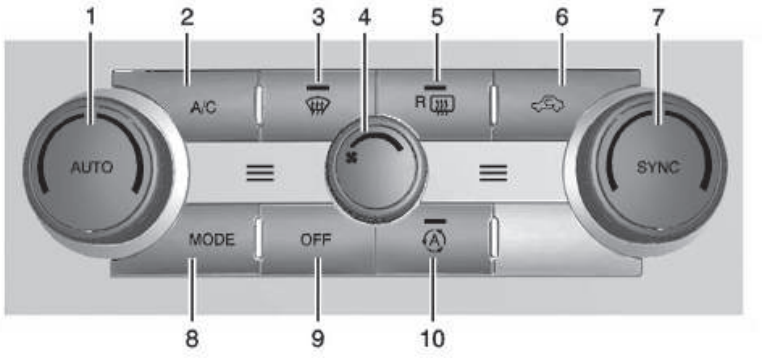
If equipped with one of these systems, it controls the heating, cooling, and ventilation.



1. Temperature Control
2. Air Delivery Mode Control
3. Fan Control
4. Air Conditioning (A/C)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dual Automatic Climate Control System



1. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
2. A/C (Air Conditioning)
3. Defrost
4. Fan Control
5. Rear Window Defogger
6. Recirculation
7. SYNC (Synchronized Temperatures)
8. MODE (Air Delivery Mode Control)
9. OFF
10. AQS (Air Quality Sensor)

Climate Control Systems ⇨ *165*. *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *167*.

Transmission

Manual Shift Mode (MSM) (Automatic Transmission)

To use this feature, if equipped, do the following.

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) into the manual gate.
   While driving in manual shift mode, the transmission will remain in the drive gear selected. Downward shifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When coming to a stop in the manual position, the vehicle will automatically shift to 1 (First) gear.
2. Push the shift lever forward toward the plus (+) to upshift or rearward toward the minus (−) to downshift.

In manual shift mode all forward gears can be selected.

Manual Mode ⇨ *198*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Features

Steering Wheel Controls

For vehicles equipped with audio steering wheel controls, basic audio system operations can be performed.



1. Call ( )

- Press to answer the call.

2. Mute / Hang up ( )

- Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.
- Press to reject incoming calls or to finish your current call or phone's SR mode.

3. SRC / SEEK (▲ / ▼)

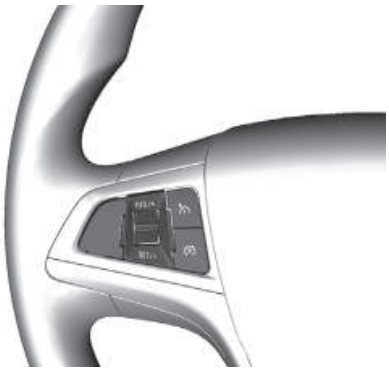
- Press SRC to change a source.
- Press to select a sound play mode.
- Turn the knob to the next or previous radio station, the music track being played.

4. Volume (+ -)

- Press + to increase the volume.
- Press - to decrease the volume.

Steering Wheel Controls ⇨ *92*.

Cruise Control



The cruise control buttons are on the left side of the steering wheel.

: Press to turn the cruise control on or off.

RES/+ : Press briefly to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed, or press and hold to accelerate. If cruise control is already active, use to increase vehicle speed.

SET/- : Press briefly to set the speed and activate cruise control. If cruise control is already active, use to decrease vehicle speed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

: Press to disengage the cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Cruise Control ⇨ *207*.

Power Outlets

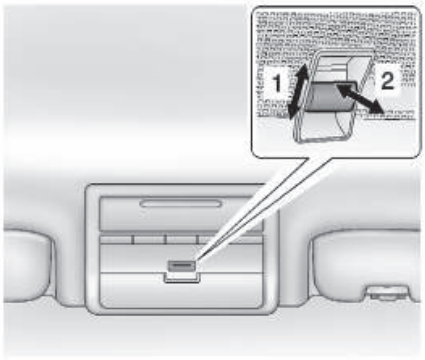
The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or an MP3 player.

The vehicle has three accessory power outlets: under the climate control system, on the rear of the center floor console, and in the rear cargo area.

Remove the cover to access and replace when not in use.

Power Outlets ⇨ *95*.

Sunroof



If equipped, the ignition must be in ON/RUN, or ACC/ACCESSORY.

1. **Open/Close :** Slide and release the switch rearward to express open the sunroof. Slide the switch forward or rearward to stop movement.

   The sunshade opens automatically with the sunroof or can be manually operated. The sunshade cannot be closed with the sunroof open. Slide and hold the switch forward to close the sunroof. The sunshade must be closed manually.

2. **Vent Open/Close :** Press and hold the switch to vent the sunroof. Pull and hold the switch to close it. The sunshade must be manually operated when the sunroof is in the vent position.

Sunroof ⇨ *43*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Performance and Maintenance

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The Traction Control System (TCS) limits wheel spin. The system turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

The Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system assists with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions. The system also turns on automatically every time the vehicle is started.

- To turn off TCS and ESC, press and release the button OFF on the instrument panel. OFF illuminates on the instrument cluster.
- Press and release the button again to turn on both systems.

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *204*.

Tire Pressure Monitor

This vehicle may have a Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS).



The low tire pressure warning light alerts to a significant loss in pressure of one of the vehicle's tires. If the warning light comes on, stop as soon as possible and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*. The warning light will remain on until the tire pressure is corrected.

The low tire pressure warning light may come on in cool weather when the vehicle is first started, and then turn off as the vehicle is driven. This may be an early indicator that the tire pressures are getting low and the tires need to be inflated to the proper pressure.

The TPMS does not replace normal monthly tire maintenance. Maintain the correct tire pressures.

Tire Pressure Monitor System ⇨ *262*.

Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates engine oil life based on vehicle use and displays the CHANGE ENGINE OIL SOON message when it is time to change the engine oil and filter. The oil life system should be reset to 100% only following an oil change.

Resetting the Oil Life System

Reset the system whenever the engine oil is changed so that the system can calculate the next engine oil change.

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/ RUN with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the change engine oil message does not appear, the system is reset.

If the change engine oil message comes back on when the vehicle is started, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Engine Oil Life System ⇨ 238.

Driving for Better Fuel Economy

Driving habits can affect fuel mileage. Here are some driving tips to get the best fuel economy possible.

- Avoid fast starts and accelerate smoothly.
- Brake gradually and avoid abrupt stops.
- Avoid idling the engine for long periods of time.
- When road and weather conditions are appropriate, use cruise control.
- Always follow posted speed limits or drive more slowly when conditions require.
- Keep vehicle tires properly inflated.
- Combine several trips into a single trip.
- Replace the vehicle's tires with the same TPC Spec number molded into the tire's sidewall near the size.
- Follow recommended scheduled maintenance.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Keys

Keys and Locks
Keys 25
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System 27
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key) 27
Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless) 29
Door Locks 31
Power Door Locks 32
Automatic Door Locks 32
Safety Locks 32

Doors
Liftgate 33

Vehicle Security
Vehicle Security 35
Vehicle Alarm System (key) 35
Vehicle Alarm System (keyless) 35
Anti-theft Alarm System 36
Immobilizer Operation (key) 37
Immobilizer Operation (keyless) 37

Exterior Mirrors
Convex Mirrors 39
Power Mirrors 39
Folding Mirrors 39
Heated Mirrors 40

Interior Mirrors
Manual Rearview Mirror 40
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror 40

Windows
Windows 41
Power Windows 41
Sun Visors 42

Roof
Sunroof 43

Keys and Locks

Keys

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with an ignition key or Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter is dangerous and children or others could be seriously injured or killed. They could operate the power window or other controls or make the vehicle move. The windows will function with the key in the ignition or with the RKE transmitter in the vehicle, and children or others could be caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave children in a vehicle with the ignition key or an RKE transmitter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

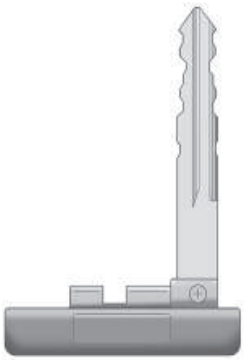


The key that is part of the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter for Key Access vehicles can be used for the ignition and all locks.



Key Access

Press the button on the RKE transmitter to extend the key. Press the button and the key blade to retract the key.



Keyless Access

This key, inside the transmitter, can be used for the driver door for Keyless Access vehicles.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle has the Keyless Access System, the transmitter has a thin button near the bottom of the transmitter used to remove the key. Press the button and pull the key out. Do not pull the key out without pressing the button.

This vehicle may have the Key Access System or a Keyless Access System. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key)* ⇨ *27* or *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless)* ⇨ *29*. *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access)* ⇨ *185* or *Ignition Positions (Key Access)* ⇨ *187*.

If it becomes difficult to turn the key, inspect the key blade for debris. Periodically clean with a brush or pick.

See your dealer if a new key is needed.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System

Do not make changes or modifications to the RKE. This could void authorization to use this equipment.

If there is a decrease in the RKE operating range:

- Check the distance. The transmitter may be too far from the vehicle.
- Check the location. Other vehicles or objects may be blocking the signal.
- Check the transmitter's battery. See “Battery Replacement” later in this section.
- If the transmitter is still not working correctly, see your dealer or a qualified technician for service.

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key)

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions will work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle.

There are other conditions which can affect the performance of the transmitter. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *27*.



(Lock) : Press to lock all doors.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The hazard warning lamps will flash once and the anti-theft alarm system will be activated. *Vehicle Alarm System (key)* ⇨ *35* or *Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)* ⇨ *35*.

(Unlock) : Press to unlock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice and the anti-theft alarm system will be deactivated. *Vehicle Alarm System (key)* ⇨ *35* or *Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)* ⇨ *35*.

The RKE transmitter buttons will not operate when the key is in the ignition.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed.

Battery Replacement

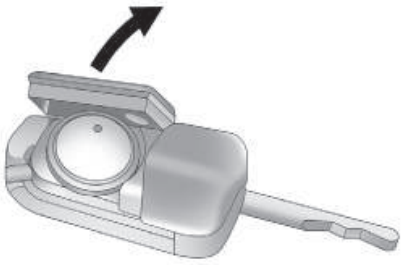
⚠ Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

To replace the battery:



1. Remove the screw from the back of the transmitter cover and remove the cover.
2. Remove the used battery. Avoid letting other components touch the circuit board.
3. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down toward the base.
4. Reassemble the transmitter cover.
5. Check the operation of the transmitter with the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless)

The RKE transmitter functions will work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle.

Other conditions can affect the performance of the transmitter. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System* ⇨ *27*.



(Lock) : Press to lock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash once and the anti-theft alarm system will be activated. *Vehicle Alarm System (key)* ⇨ *35* or *Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)* ⇨ *35*.

(Unlock) : Press to unlock all doors.

The hazard warning lamps will flash twice and the anti-theft alarm system will be deactivated. *Vehicle Alarm System (key)* ⇨ *35* or *Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)* ⇨ *35*.

In some countries according to the vehicle configuration, to unlock the driver door, press the button once. Immediately press the button within five seconds to unlock all doors. The interior lamps may come on.

(Vehicle Locator/Panic Alarm) : Press and hold for about two seconds to initiate vehicle locator. Both the turn signal lamps flash and the horn sounds three times.

Keyless Unlocking



With the Keyless Access transmitter within 1 m (3 ft), approach the front door and pull the handle to unlock and open the door. On some models there is a touch sensor on the door handle. If the transmitter is recognized, the door will unlock and open.

Keyless Locking

The doors lock after several seconds if the ignition is off, if all doors are closed and at least one keyless access transmitter has been removed from the interior of the vehicle.

The function can be deactivated by personalization setting. *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *119*.

If a Keyless Access Transmitter is removed from the vehicle, all doors including the fuel filler door and tailgate will be automatically locked after several seconds.

Press the button on the door handle or push the unlock button on the RKE transmitter to unlock all doors, the fuel filler door and the tailgate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

Passive door lock function does not work after the tailgate is opened and closed.

Caution

If the vehicle is locked and the tailgate is opened with or without the use of the RKE, all the doors including the fuel filler door will also be unlocked in the process. Once the tailgate is again closed, the side doors, fuel filler door and tailgate will remain unlocked ***until the lock button on the RKE is pressed and released.***

Caution

Opening and closing any of the side doors will enable the automatic locking function after all the other doors have been closed with at least one of the RKE removed from the interior of the vehicle. The vehicle will automatically lock the tailgate, all the doors and fuel filler after ± 8 seconds from having closed any side door.

Programming Transmitters to the Vehicle

Only RKE transmitters programmed to this vehicle will work. If a transmitter is lost or stolen, a replacement can be purchased and programmed through your dealer. When the replacement transmitter is programmed to this vehicle, all remaining transmitters must also be reprogrammed. Any lost or stolen transmitters will no longer work once the new transmitter is programmed. See your dealer to program transmitters to this vehicle.

Starting the Vehicle with a Low Transmitter Battery



If the transmitter battery is weak, the DIC may display ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED when you try to start the vehicle. To start the vehicle, place the transmitter in the center console storage area transmitter pocket with the buttons facing up. Then, with the vehicle in P (Park) or N (Neutral), press the brake pedal and the ignition control knob. See “Starting the Engine” under Starting and Operating, for additional information about the vehicle's electronic keyless ignition. Replace the transmitter battery as soon as possible.

Battery Replacement

⚠ Warning

Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in accordance with environmental protection regulations to help protect the environment and your health.

Caution

When replacing the battery, do not touch any of the circuitry on the transmitter. Static from your body could damage the transmitter.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To replace the battery:



1. Remove the key from the transmitter by pressing the thin button near the bottom of the transmitter and pulling the key out. Do not pull the key out without pressing the button.
2. Separate the transmitter with a flat, thin object inserted into the slot on the side of the transmitter.

   Do not try to separate the transmitter by inserting a flat, thin object into the key slot. This will permanently damage the transmitter.
3. Remove the old battery. Do not use a metal object.
4. Insert the new battery, positive side facing down. Replace with a CR2032 or equivalent battery.
5. Snap the transmitter back together.
6. Reinstall the key into the transmitter.

Door Locks

⚠ Warning

Unlocked doors can be dangerous.

- Passengers, especially children, can easily open the doors and fall out of a moving vehicle. When a door is locked, the handle will not open it. The chance of being thrown out of the vehicle in a crash is increased if the doors are not locked. So, all

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

passengers should wear safety belts properly and the doors should be locked whenever the vehicle is driven.

- Young children who get into unlocked vehicles may be unable to get out. A child can be overcome by extreme heat and can suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke. Always lock the vehicle whenever leaving it.
- Outsiders can easily enter through an unlocked door when you slow down or stop the vehicle. Locking the doors can help prevent this from happening.

To lock or unlock a door, use the key or lock knob from the inside.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Door Locks

The Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter functions will work up to 6 m (20 ft) away from the vehicle.

On the RKE transmitter press to lock, and press to unlock. *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (key)* ⇨ *27* or *Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) System Operation (keyless)* ⇨ *29*.

: The power door lock switches are located on the front doors.

- Press the right side of the switch to unlock the doors.
- Remove the ignition key and press the left side of the switch to lock all of the doors.

Deadlock

For further protection when leaving the vehicle, you can deadlock the doors if the vehicle has the additional anti-theft system.

Deadlocking electronically jams all the electric locks so that no door can be opened, even if entry is gained by breaking glass.

⚠ Warning

Do not use deadlock if there are people in the vehicle. The doors cannot be unlocked from the inside.

To engage deadlock, do one of the following:

Press the LOCK button twice in succession. Press the LOCK button once to lock the vehicle, and then press it again (within 3 seconds) to engage the deadlock.

Insert the key in the driver door lock and turn the key twice continuously towards the rear of the vehicle.

That is, once to lock the doors, then a second time to engage the deadlock.

To disengage deadlock, press UNLOCK button on the key. This unlocks the doors.

Note

Deadlock function operates when all doors and tailgate are closed.

Note

Disengaging the deadlock occurs when unlocking the doors in the normal way.

Automatic Door Locks

Automatic Door Lock

When the doors are closed, the ignition is on, and the shift lever is moved out of P (Park) for automatic transmissions, or when vehicle speed becomes faster than 13 km/h (8 mph) for manual transmissions, the doors will lock.

Automatic Door Unlock

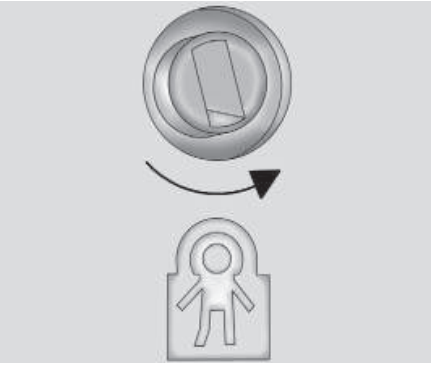
When the shift lever is moved into P (Park) for automatic transmissions or when the key is removed from the ignition for manual transmissions, the doors will automatically unlock.

Safety Locks

The rear door safety locks prevent passengers from opening the rear doors from inside the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Safety Locks



If equipped, the safety lock is located on the inside edge of the rear doors. To use the safety lock:

1. Insert the key into the safety lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the horizontal position.
2. Close the door.
3. Do the same for the other rear door.

To open a rear door when the safety lock is on:

1. Unlock the door by activating the inside handle, by using the power door lock switch, or by using the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter.
2. Open the door from the outside.

To cancel the safety lock:

1. Unlock the door and open it from the outside.
2. Insert the key into the safety lock slot and turn it so the slot is in the vertical position. Do the same for the other door.

Doors

Liftgate

⚠ Warning

Exhaust gases can enter the vehicle if it is driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open, or with any objects that pass through the seal between the body and the trunk/hatch or liftgate. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle must be driven with the liftgate or trunk/hatch open:

- Close all of the windows.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that brings in only outside air

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems” in the Index.

- If the vehicle is equipped with a power liftgate, disable the power liftgate function.

Engine Exhaust ⇨ 194.

To lock the liftgate press or on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter or press the power door lock switch.

To unlock the liftgate press or twice on the RKE transmitter or press the power door lock switch.

To open the liftgate, press the touch pad on the underside of the liftgate handle and pull up.

To close the liftgate, pull down using the handle and push down until it latches.

Caution

All doors are unlocked when tailgate is opened using touchpad button.

The lock button on the Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitter must be pushed after closing tailgate for anti-theft and all doors-locking.

Liftgate Operation with Loss of Power



To open the liftgate if the vehicle's battery is disconnected or the voltage is low, access the release lever. Remove the interior trim cover on the inside of the liftgate. Use a tool to push the lever on the latch until the liftgate releases.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Security

This vehicle has theft-deterrent features; however, they do not make the vehicle impossible to steal.

Vehicle Alarm System (key)

This vehicle may have an anti-theft alarm system.



If your vehicle has active on vehicle alarm system, the indicator shows the system is working.

The security indicator goes out when the doors are unlocked using the keyless entry transmitter or key.

The security indicator comes on when the doors are locked.

Arming the System

- Close the tailgate, the hood and all the doors.
- Turn off the vehicle.
- Press and release on the RKE transmitter.

Make sure all passengers have exited the vehicle.

The alarm automatically arms after about 30 seconds.

Pressing a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the system.

Disarming the System

To disarm the system:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.

Auto Door Relock

If the door, the hood or the tailgate is not opened or the ignition key is not in the ON position within 30 seconds after disarming the system, all the doors are automatically locked and the system will rearm.

Vehicle Alarm System (keyless)

This vehicle may have an anti-theft alarm system.

Arming the System

To arm the system:

- Close the tailgate, the hood, and all the doors.
- Turn the ignition key to OFF.
- Press and release on the RKE transmitter.
- Or, lock the vehicle using the key in the driver door.

Make sure all passengers have exited the vehicle.

The alarm automatically arms after about 30 seconds.

Pressing a second time will bypass the 30-second delay and immediately arm the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the key is inserted during the 30-second time frame, the alarm will not activate.

Disarming the System

To disarm the system:

- Press on the RKE transmitter.
- Or, use the Keyless Entry system by pressing the button on the door handle. The RKE transmitter must be within 1 m (3 ft) of the vehicle.
- Or, Unlock the door with the blade key.

Auto Door Relock

If the door, the hood or the tailgate is not opened or the ignition key is not in the ON position within 30 seconds after disarming the system, all the doors are automatically locked and the system will rearm.

Anti-theft Alarm System

Siren sound

If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, it has intrusion sensor, inclination sensor and glass breakage detection sensor.

This system monitors the interior space through these sensors and activates the siren if an intrusion into the passenger compartment is detected, the tires are stolen or the unintended towing occurs.

To stop the siren:

Press the LOCK or UNLOCK button on the transmitter.

If the unauthorized entry still exists, the siren sound will be activated with a periodic repeat.

Note

Alarming will sound if a door is opened by a key when anti-theft mode is activated. Open the door using UNLOCK button on the transmitter.

Note

Tap the key hole or heat the key if the door does not open with freezing key hole in cold weather.

⚠ Warning

Do not use the transmitter to lock the vehicle if anyone is to be left inside.

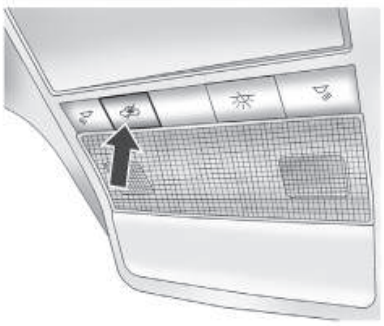
The transmitter activates interior protection, which will trigger the siren if movement is detected inside the vehicle.

Never leave children or pets alone in your vehicle.

The temperature inside the vehicle can increase more rapidly and reach much higher levels than the temperature outside.

This can result in serious injury or death.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



If you want to turn off the additional anti-theft system, press the button located on the headliner. Anti-theft off indicator in the button will come on.

When you activate the additional anti-theft system by pressing the button again, antitheft off indicator will go out.

Immobilizer Operation (key)

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the key is turned to LOCK and removed from the ignition.

The system is automatically disarmed when the vehicle is started with the correct key. The key uses a transponder that matches an immobilizer control unit in the vehicle and automatically disarms the system. Only the correct key starts the vehicle. The vehicle may not start if the key is damaged.



The immobilizer light, located in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system. *Immobilizer Light* ⇨ *114*.

When trying to start the vehicle, the immobilizer light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the immobilizer light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition off and try again.

If the engine still does not start, and the key appears to be undamaged, try another ignition key.

If the engine still does not start and the light continues to stay on with the other key, the vehicle needs service. If the vehicle does start, the first key may be damaged. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new key made.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft-deterrent system in the vehicle.

Immobilizer Operation (keyless)

This vehicle has a passive theft-deterrent system.

The system does not have to be manually armed or disarmed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle is automatically immobilized when the ignition control knob is turned to LOCK/OFF.

The immobilization system is disarmed when the ignition control knob is turned and a valid transmitter is found in the vehicle.



The security light in the instrument cluster, comes on if there is a problem with arming or disarming the theft-deterrent system.

One or more keyless access transmitters can be matched to the vehicle's immobilizer control unit. Only a correctly matched keyless access transmitter will start the vehicle. If the keyless access transmitter is ever damaged, you may not be able to start your vehicle.

When trying to start the vehicle, the security light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on.

If the engine does not start and the security light stays on, there is a problem with the system. Turn the ignition control knob off and try again.

If the ignition control knob does not turn, and the keyless access transmitter appears to be undamaged, try another keyless access transmitter. Or, you may try placing the transmitter in the transmitter pocket located in the center console. See “Electronic Key Not Detected” under *Key and Lock Messages* ⇨ *116*.

If the ignition control knob still does not rotate with the other transmitter, the vehicle needs service. If the ignition control knob does rotate, the first transmitter may be faulty. See your dealer who can service the theft-deterrent system and have a new keyless access transmitter programmed to the vehicle.

Do not leave the key or device that disarms or deactivates the theft deterrent system in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exterior Mirrors

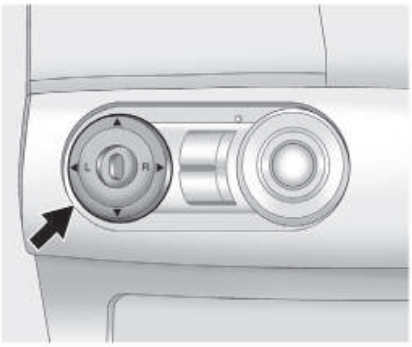
Convex Mirrors

⚠ Warning

A convex mirror can make things, like other vehicles, look farther away than they really are. If you cut too sharply into the right lane, you could hit a vehicle on the right. Check the inside mirror or glance over your shoulder before changing lanes.

Both passenger and driver outside mirrors are convex shaped.
A convex mirror's surface is curved so that more can be seen of the road behind the vehicle.

Power Mirrors



Controls for the outside power mirrors are on the driver side instrument panel.

To adjust:

1. Turn the knob to the L (Left) or R (Right) to choose a mirror.
2. Adjust each mirror so that the side and the area behind the vehicle can be seen.
3. Return the control to the center position so the mirror cannot be moved.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191*.

The outside mirrors will work up to 10 minutes after the vehicle has been turned off. If a door is opened while the key is in the LOCK position or if taken out of the ignition, the mirror will not work.

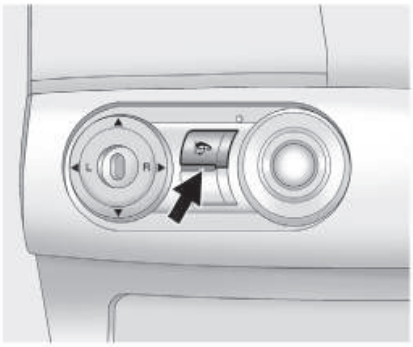
Folding Mirrors

Manual

If equipped, the outside mirrors can be folded inward to prevent damage when going through an automatic car wash. To fold, pull the mirror toward the vehicle. Push the mirror outward to return it to the original position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power



If equipped, press the folding mirror button to power fold the outside mirrors.

The ignition must be in ON/RUN or ACC/ACCESSORY. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191*.

Heated Mirrors

For vehicles with outside heated mirrors:

(Rear Window Defogger) : Press to heat the outside rearview mirrors. See “Rear Window Defogger” under *Dual Automatic Climate Control System* ⇨ *167*.

Interior Mirrors

Manual Rearview Mirror

To adjust the inside rearview mirror, hold the rearview mirror in the center and move it to view the area behind the vehicle.

Push the tab forward for daytime use and pull it for nighttime use to avoid glare from the headlamps from behind.

Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Your vehicle may be equipped with Electro-Chromic Mirror(ECM), which automatically reduces glare from vehicles behind you providing uniform light levels to your eyes.

To turn the ECM ON, press the button on the mirror cover. The indicator light will be illuminated. The ignition switch must be in the ON position.

To turn the ECM OFF, press the button again.

Caution

There are two light sensors which detect ambient light level and glare from vehicles behind you.

Do not cover the sensors or hang items on the EC mirror.

Doing so may limit the ECM operation and you may have no benefit from it.

Windows

⚠ Warning

Never leave a child, a helpless adult, or a pet alone in a vehicle, especially with the windows closed in warm or hot weather. They can be overcome by the extreme heat and suffer permanent injuries or even death from heat stroke.



The vehicle aerodynamics are designed to improve fuel economy performance. This may result in a pulsing sound when a window is partially open. To reduce the sound, open another window or the sunroof (if equipped).

Power Windows

⚠ Warning

Leaving children in a vehicle with the keys is dangerous for many reasons. Children or others could be badly injured or even killed. They could operate the power windows or other controls or even make the vehicle move. The windows will function and they could be seriously injured or killed if caught in the path of a closing window. Do not leave keys in a vehicle with children.

When there are children in the rear seat use the window lockout button to prevent unintentional operation of the windows.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The window switches for all doors are located on the driver door. Each door also has a switch.

To open or close a window, press or pull up on the switch.

The power windows operate when the ignition is in ON/RUN or ACC/ ACCESSORY.

Express-Down Window

The driver window switch has an express-down feature that lowers the window without holding the switch. Press the switch part way and the window will open a small amount. Press the switch down all the way and release it and the window lowers all the way.

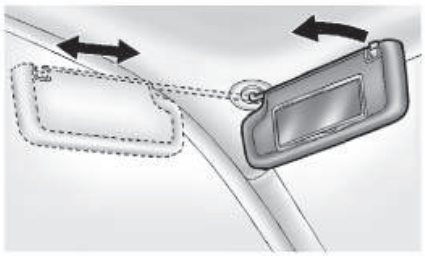
To stop the window while it is lowering, press and release the switch.

Window Lockout



The vehicle has a lockout feature to prevent rear passengers from operating the windows. Press to turn the feature on and off.

Sun Visors

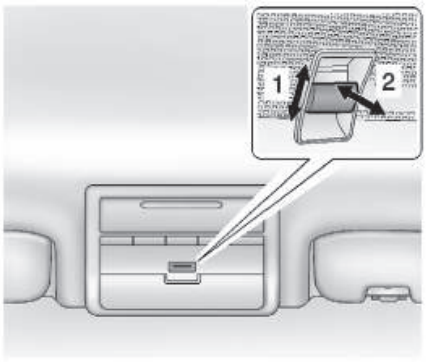


Pull the sun visor down to block glare. Detach the sun visor from the center mount to pivot to the side window or, if equipped, extend along the rod.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Roof

Sunroof



If equipped, the ignition must be in ON/RUN, or ACC/ACCESSORY.

1. **Open/Close :** Slide and release the switch rearward to express open the sunroof. The sunshade will open automatically with the sunroof. Slide the switch forward or rearward to stop movement.
2. **Vent Open/Close :** Press and hold the switch to vent the sunroof. Pull and hold the switch to close it. The sunshade must be manually operated when the sunroof is in the vent position.

Sunshade

The sunshade opens automatically with the sunroof or can be manually operated. The sunshade cannot be closed with the sunroof open.

Slide and hold the switch forward to close the sunroof. The sunshade must be closed manually.



Dirt and debris may collect on the sunroof seal or in the track. This could cause an issue with sunroof operation, noise, or plugging the water drainage system. Periodically open the sunroof and remove any obstacles or loose debris. Wipe the sunroof seal and roof sealing area using a clean cloth, mild soap, and water. Do not remove grease from the sunroof.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Seats and Restraints

Head Restraints
Head Restraints 45
Active Head Restraints 46

Front Seats
Seat Adjustment 47
Power Seat Adjustment 48
Lumbar Adjustment 48
Reclining Seatbacks 48
Heated Front Seats 50
Folding Seatback 50

Rear Seats
Rear Seats 52
Heated Rear Seats 55
Third Row Seats 55

Safety Belts
Safety Belts 57
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly 58
Lap-Shoulder Belt 59
Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy 61
Lap Belt 61
Safety System Check 62
Safety Belt Care 62
Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash 62

Airbag System
Airbag System 63
Where Are the Airbags? 65
When Should an Airbag Inflate? 66
What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 67
How Does an Airbag Restrain? 67
What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 67
Airbag On-Off Switch 68
Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 70
Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle 70
Airbag System Check 71
Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash 71

Child Restraints
Older Children 72
Infants and Young Children 73
Child Restraint Systems 75
Where to Put the Restraint 77
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 78
Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash 83
Securing Child Restraints (Rear seat) 83
Securing Child Restraints (Front passenger seat) 85

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Head Restraints

Front Seats

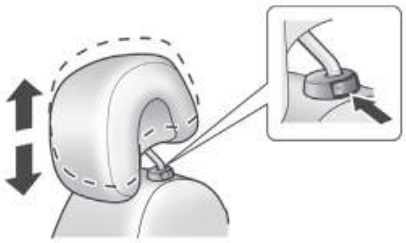
The vehicle's front seats have adjustable headrests in the outboard seating positions.

⚠ Warning

With headrests that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the headrests for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

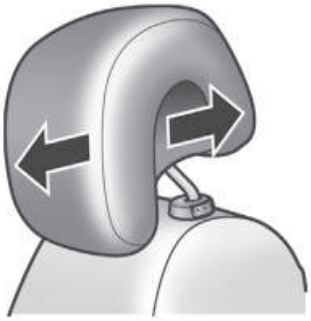


Adjust the headrest so that the top of the headrest is at the same height as the top of the occupant's head. This position reduces the chance of a neck injury in a crash.



Pull up the head restraints in order to adjust the position upward. Push down the head restraints while pressing the release button in order to adjust the position downward.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

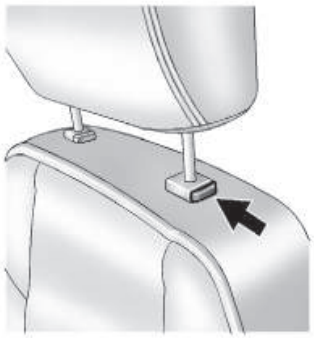


The headrest can be adjusted forward and rearward. To adjust the headrest forward, grasp the headrest at the bottom and pull forward to the desired locked position. To adjust the headrest rearward, grasp the headrest at the bottom and pull forward fully until the mechanism releases and allows the headrest to return to the full rear position.

The front seat outboard headrests are not designed to be removed.

Rear Seats

The vehicle's rear seat has adjustable headrests in all three seating positions.



The height of the headrest can be adjusted. Pull the headrest up to raise it. Try to move the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.

To lower the headrest, press the button, located on the top of the seatback, and push the headrest down. Try to move the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.

Rear seat headrests are not designed to be removed.

Active Head Restraints

The vehicle has an active head restraint system in the front seating positions. These automatically tilt forward to reduce the risk of neck injury if the vehicle is hit from behind.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Seats

Seat Adjustment

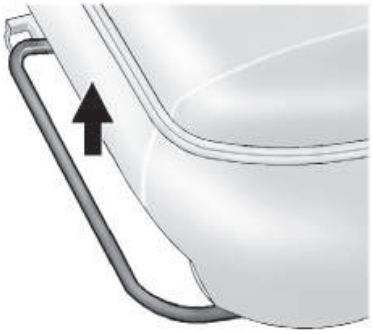
⚠ Danger

Do not sit nearer than 25 cm from the steering wheel, to permit safe airbag deployment.

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

Seat Position



To adjust a manual seat:

1. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat.
2. Slide the seat to the desired position and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to be sure it is locked in place.

Driver Seat Height Adjuster



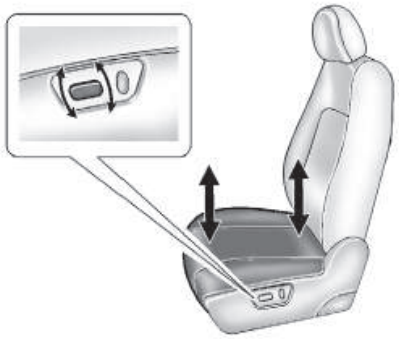
If equipped, move the lever up or down repeatedly to raise or lower the driver seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Power Seat Adjustment



If equipped, move the seat forward or rearward by sliding the horizontal control forward or rearward.



Raise or lower the front or rear part of the seat cushion by moving the front or rear of the control up or down.

Lumbar Adjustment



If equipped, move the lever forward or rearward to increase or decrease the lumbar support.

Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ Warning

Sitting in a reclined position when the vehicle is in motion can be dangerous. Even when buckled up, the safety belts cannot do their job.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

The shoulder belt will not be against your body. Instead, it will be in front of you. In a crash, you could go into it, receiving neck or other injuries.

The lap belt could go up over your abdomen. The belt forces would be there, not at your pelvic bones. This could cause serious internal injuries.

For proper protection when the vehicle is in motion, have the seatback upright. Then sit well back in the seat and wear the safety belt properly.



Do not have a seatback reclined if the vehicle is moving.

Manual Reclining Seatbacks

⚠ Warning

You can lose control of the vehicle if you try to adjust a driver seat while the vehicle is moving. Adjust the driver seat only when the vehicle is not moving.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.



To recline a manual seatback.

1. Lift the lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Move the seatback to the desired position, and then release the lever to lock the seatback in place.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

To return the seatback to the upright position.

1. Lift the lever fully without applying pressure to the seatback, and the seatback will return to the upright position.
2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.

Power Reclining Seatbacks



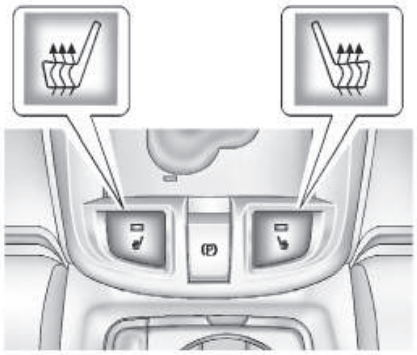
To adjust a power seatback, if equipped.

- Tilt the top of the control rearward to recline.
- Tilt the top of the control forward to raise.

Heated Front Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns. To reduce the risk of burns, people with such a condition should use care when using the seat heater, especially for long periods of time. Do not place anything on the seat that insulates against heat, such as a blanket, cushion, cover, or similar item. This may cause the seat heater to overheat. An overheated seat heater may cause a burn or may damage the seat.



If equipped, the controls are on the center console. To operate, the engine must be running.

Press or to heat the driver or passenger seat. The indicator light on the button turns on when this feature is on. Press the button again to turn this feature off.

The passenger seat may take longer to heat up.

Folding Seatback

The front passenger seatback folds flat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

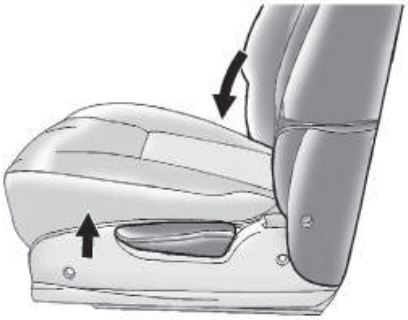
If you fold the seatback forward to carry longer objects, such as skis, be sure any such cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. For more information, *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*, *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *65*.

⚠ Warning

Things you put on this seatback can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash. Remove or secure all items before driving.

To fold the seatback.

1. Lower the head restraint completely.
2. Lift the bar under the front of the seat cushion to unlock the seat. Slide the seat as far back as it will go and release the bar.
3. Try to move the seat back and forth to make sure it is locked into place.



4. Lift the lever and fold the seatback forward until it disengages.
5. Continue folding the seatback until it is completely folded.

To return the seatback to the upright position.

1. Raise the seatback and push it rearward until it re-engages.

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

2. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

The lever is also used to recline the seatback. *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *48*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Seats

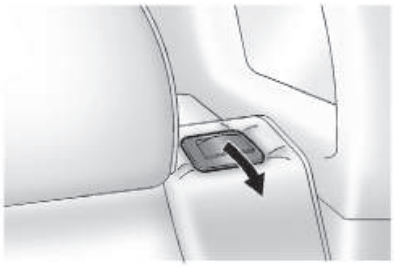
Folding the Seatback

To fold a seatback:

Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

1. Unbuckle the rear safety belts and put the front seatback in the upright position. *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *48*.
2. Push the headrests down all the way. *Head Restraints* ⇨ *45*.



3. Lift the lever on top of the seatback to unlock the seatback. Then, fold the seatback forward.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other seatback, if desired.

Returning the Seatback to the Upright Position

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

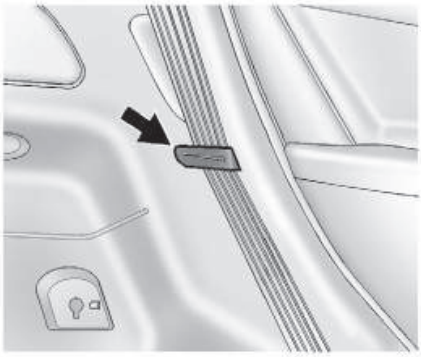
Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

A safety belt that is improperly routed, not properly attached, or twisted will not provide the protection needed in a crash. The person wearing the belt could be seriously injured. After raising the rear seatback, always check to be sure that the safety belts are properly routed and attached, and are not twisted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To return the seatback to the upright position:



1. Place the safety belts in the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.
2. Lift the seatback up and push it back into place.
3. Remove the safety belts from the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.

   Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.
4. Push and pull the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
5. Repeat Steps 1–4 for the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Reclining the Seatback

To recline the seatback:

1. Lift and hold the lever on top of the seatback.
2. Tilt the seatback rearward, and then release the lever.
3. Repeat Steps 1 and 2 for the other seatback, if desired.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift and hold the lever on top of the seatback.
2. Pull the seatback forward to the upright position, and then release the lever.
3. Push and pull on the seatback to make sure it is locked.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other seatback, if necessary.

Tumbling the Second Row Seats

Caution

A second row seat cannot be tumbled when the seatback is in the folded position. The second row seatback must be in the upright position before using the lever on the outboard side of the seatback to tumble the seat.

Caution

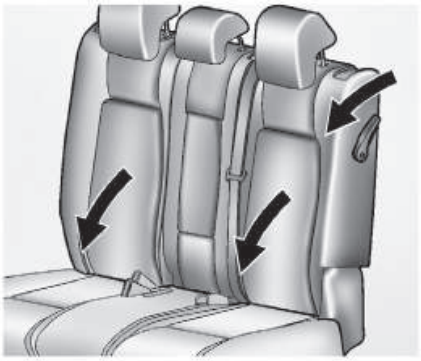
Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

Second row seats can be tumbled to access the third row seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To tumble the seat:

1. Unbuckle the rear safety belts and put the front seatback in the upright position. *Reclining Seatbacks* ⇨ *48*.
2. Push the headrests down all the way. *Head Restraints* ⇨ *45*.



3. Pull forward on the lever on the outboard side of the seatback. Then, push the seatback forward slightly. The seatback will fold and the seat will tumble forward automatically.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other seat, if desired.

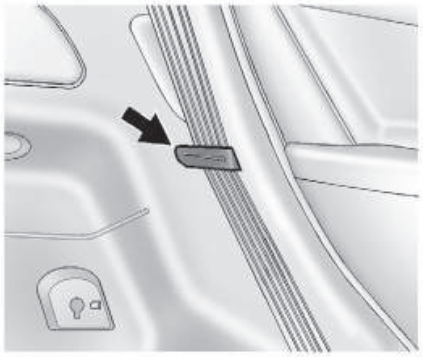
Returning the Second Row Seats from the Tumbled Position

⚠ Warning

To avoid injury, do not place toes or feet on top of or under the second row seats while the second row seats are being returned to the sitting position from the tumbled position. Third row seat passengers should keep their feet on the floor.

Before returning a tumbled seat to the sitting position, clear the area under and around the seat base. Make sure third row seat passengers use the footprints on the vehicle floor as a guide for proper foot placement while returning the second row seats to the sitting position.

To return a seat to the sitting position:



1. Place the safety belts in the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.
2. Pull the seat base toward the vehicle floor and push down on the seat to secure it.
3. Push and pull on the seat to make sure it is locked in place.
4. Raise the seatback to the upright position. See “Returning the Seatback to the Upright Position” earlier in this section.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Remove the safety belts from the safety belt guides on the vehicle trim.

   Make sure the safety belts are not twisted or caught in the seatback.

6. Repeat Steps 1–5 for the other seat, if necessary.

Heated Rear Seats

⚠ Warning

If you cannot feel temperature change or pain to the skin, the seat heater may cause burns.



If equipped, the buttons are on the rear door trim.

Press . An indicator light turns on when this feature is on. The engine must be running for this feature to work.

Third Row Seats

Folding the Seatback

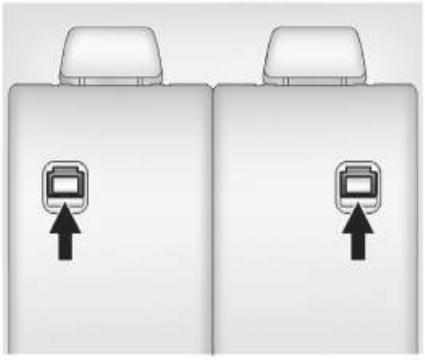
Caution

Folding a rear seat with the safety belts still fastened may cause damage to the seat or the safety belts. Always unbuckle the safety belts and return them to their normal stowed position before folding a rear seat.

To fold a seatback:

1. Unbuckle the safety belts in the third row seats.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Lift the handle on the back of the third row seatback. The headrest will release and fold forward automatically.
3. Grasping the handle, fold the seatback forward and release it.
4. Repeat Steps 2 and 3 for the other seatback, if desired.

Returning the Seatback to the Upright Position

⚠ Warning

If either seatback is not locked, it could move forward in a sudden stop or crash. That could cause injury to the person sitting there. Always push and pull on the seatbacks to be sure they are locked.

⚠ Warning

With head restraints that are not installed and adjusted properly, there is a greater chance that occupants will suffer a neck/spinal injury in a crash. Do not drive until the head restraints for all occupants are installed and adjusted properly.

To return the seatback to the upright position:

1. Lift the seatback up and push it back into place.
2. Push and pull on the top of the seatback to be sure it is locked into position.
3. Return the headrest to the upright position by lifting it up and pushing it rearward.

   Push and pull on the headrest to make sure that it is locked in place.
4. Repeat Steps 1–3 for the other seatback, if necessary.

When the seatback is not in use, it should be kept in the upright, locked position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belts

This section of the manual describes how to use safety belts properly. It also describes some things not to do with safety belts.

⚠ Warning

Do not let anyone ride where a safety belt cannot be worn properly. In a crash, if you or your passenger(s) are not wearing safety belts, injuries can be much worse than if you are wearing safety belts. You can be seriously injured or killed by hitting things inside the vehicle harder or by being ejected from the vehicle. In addition, anyone who is not buckled up can strike other passengers in the vehicle.

It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a collision, passengers riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

passengers to ride in any area of the vehicle that is not equipped with seats and safety belts.

Always wear a safety belt, and check that all passenger(s) are restrained properly too.

This vehicle has indicators as a reminder to buckle the safety belts. *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *102*.

Why Safety Belts Work



When riding in a vehicle, you travel as fast as the vehicle does. If the vehicle stops suddenly, you keep going until something stops you. It could be the windshield, the instrument panel, or the safety belts!

When you wear a safety belt, you and the vehicle slow down together. There is more time to stop because you stop over a longer distance and, when worn properly, your strongest bones take the forces from the safety belts. That is why wearing safety belts makes such good sense.

Questions and Answers About Safety Belts

Q: Will I be trapped in the vehicle after a crash if I am wearing a safety belt?

A: You *could* be — whether you are wearing a safety belt or not. Your chance of being conscious during and after a crash, so you *can* unbuckle and get out, is *much* greater if you are belted.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Q: If my vehicle has airbags, why should I have to wear safety belts?

A: Airbags are supplemental systems only; so they work *with* safety belts — not instead of them. Whether or not an airbag is provided, all occupants still have to buckle up to get the most protection.

Also, in nearly all regions, the law requires wearing safety belts.

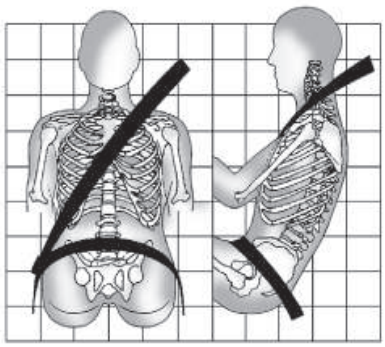
How to Wear Safety Belts Properly

This section is only for people of adult size.

There are special things to know about safety belts and children. And there are different rules for smaller children and infants. If a child will be riding in the vehicle. *Older Children* ⇨ *72*. *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *73*. Follow those rules for everyone's protection.

It is very important for all occupants to buckle up. Statistics show that unbelted people are hurt more often in crashes than those who are wearing safety belts.

There are important things to know about wearing a safety belt properly.



- Sit up straight and always keep your feet on the floor in front of you.
- Always use the correct buckle for your seating position.
- Wear the lap part of the belt low and snug on the hips, just touching the thighs. In a crash, this applies force to the strong pelvic bones and you would be less likely to slide under the lap belt. If you slid under it, the belt would apply force on your abdomen. This could cause serious or even fatal injuries.
- Wear the shoulder belt over the shoulder and across the chest. These parts of the body are best able to take belt restraining forces. The shoulder belt locks if there is a sudden stop or crash.

⚠ Warning

You can be seriously injured, or even killed, by not wearing your safety belt properly.

- Never allow the lap or shoulder belt to become loose or twisted.
- Never wear the shoulder belt under both arms or behind your back.
- Never route the lap or shoulder belt over an armrest.

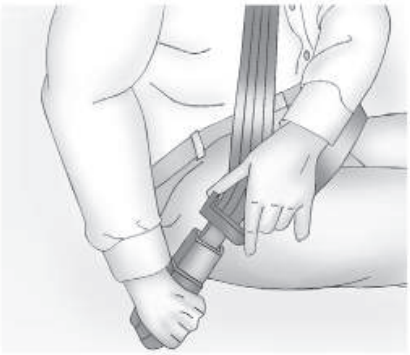
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lap-Shoulder Belt

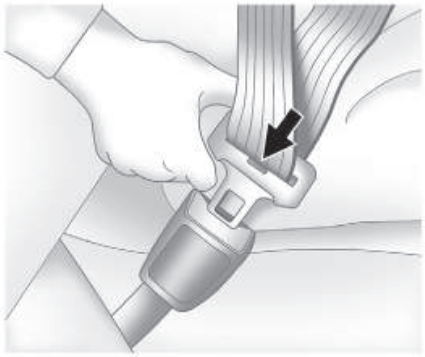
All seating positions in the vehicle have a lap-shoulder belt except for the second row center position which may have a lap belt. *Lap Belt* ⇨ *61*.

The following instructions explain how to wear a lap-shoulder belt properly.

1. Adjust the seat, if the seat is adjustable, so you can sit up straight. To see how, see “Seats” in the Index.



2. Pick up the latch plate and pull the belt across you. Do not let it get twisted. The lap-shoulder belt may lock if you pull the belt across you very quickly. If this happens, let the belt go back slightly to unlock it. Then pull the belt across you more slowly.

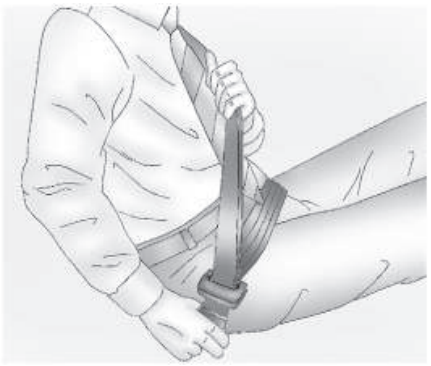


3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Pull up on the latch plate to make sure it is secure.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.

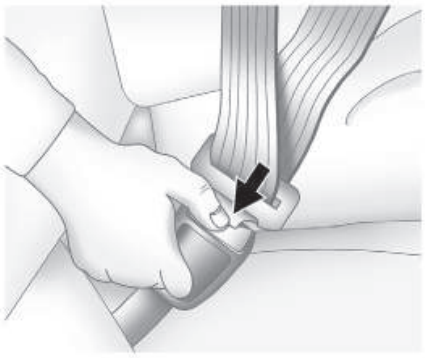
4. If equipped with a shoulder belt height adjuster, move it to the height that is right for you. See “Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster” later in this section for instructions on use and important safety information.



5. To make the lap part tight, pull up on the shoulder belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It may be necessary to pull the stitching on the safety belt through the latch plate to fully tighten the lap belt on smaller occupants.



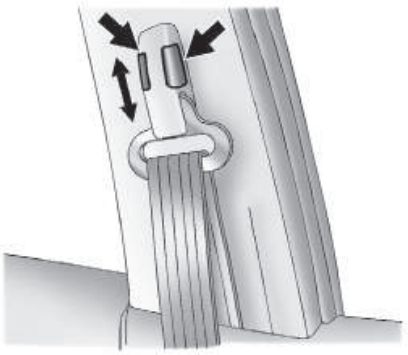
To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle. The belt should return to its stowed position. Slide the latch plate up the safety belt webbing when the safety belt is not in use. The latch plate should rest on the stitching on the safety belt, near the guide loop on the side wall.

Before a door is closed, be sure the safety belt is out of the way. If a door is slammed against a safety belt, damage can occur to both the safety belt and the vehicle.

Shoulder Belt Height Adjuster

The vehicle has a shoulder belt height adjuster for the driver and outboard front passenger seating positions.

Adjust the height so that the shoulder portion of the belt is centered on the shoulder. The belt should be away from the face and neck, but not falling off of the shoulder. Improper shoulder belt height adjustment could reduce the effectiveness of the safety belt in a crash. *How to Wear Safety Belts Properly* ⇨ *58*.



Squeeze the release buttons together and move the height adjuster up or down to the desired position.

After the adjuster is set to the desired position, try to move it up or down without squeezing the release buttons to make sure it has locked into position.

Safety Belt Pretensioners

The vehicle has safety belt pretensioners for the front outboard occupants. Although the safety belt pretensioners cannot be seen, they are part of the safety belt assembly. They can help tighten the safety

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

belts during a severe frontal crash, and side and rear impacts if the threshold conditions for pretensioner activation are met. Pretensioners are not designed to activate in a minor frontal crash. Pretensioners are designed to activate in a moderate to severe rear crash.

Pretensioners work only once. If the pretensioners activate in a crash, the pretensioners and probably other new parts for the vehicle's safety belt system will need to be replaced. *Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash* ⇨ *62*.

Safety Belt Use During Pregnancy

Safety belts work for everyone, including pregnant women. Like all occupants, they are more likely to be seriously injured if they do not wear safety belts.



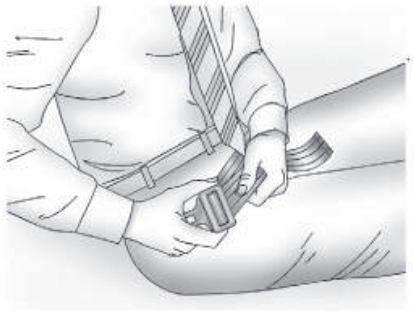
A pregnant woman should wear a lap-shoulder belt, and the lap portion should be worn as low as possible, below the rounding, throughout the pregnancy.

The best way to protect the fetus is to protect the mother. When a safety belt is worn properly, it is more likely that the fetus will not be hurt in a crash. For pregnant women, as for anyone, the key to making safety belts effective is wearing them properly.

Lap Belt

This section is only for the lap belt. To learn how to wear a lap-shoulder belt. *Lap-Shoulder Belt* ⇨ *59*.

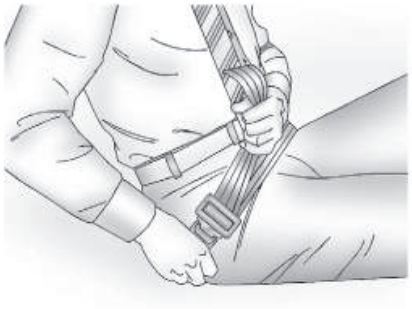
The vehicle may have a second row center seating position with a lap belt. The lap belt has no retractor.



To make the belt longer, tilt the latch plate and pull it along the belt.

Buckle, position and release it the same way as the lap part of a lap-shoulder belt.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



To make the belt shorter, pull its free end as shown until the belt is snug.

Make sure the release button on the buckle is positioned so you would be able to unbuckle the safety belt quickly if necessary.

If you find that the latch plate will not go fully into the buckle, see if you are using the correct buckle. Be sure that the latch plate clicks when inserted into the buckle.

To unlatch the belt, push the button on the buckle.

Safety System Check

Now and then, check that the safety belt reminder light, safety belts, buckles, latch plates, retractors, and anchorages are all working properly. Look for any other loose or damaged safety belt system parts that might keep a safety belt system from doing its job. See your dealer to have it repaired. Torn or frayed safety belts may not protect you in a crash. They can rip apart under impact forces. If a belt is torn or frayed, get a new one right away.

Make sure the safety belt reminder light is working. *Safety Belt Reminders* ⇨ *102*.

Keep safety belts clean and dry. *Safety Belt Care* ⇨ *62*.

Safety Belt Care

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Replacing Safety Belt System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the safety belt system in the vehicle. A damaged safety belt system may not properly protect the person using it, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the safety belt systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After a minor crash, replacement of safety belts may not be necessary. But the safety belt assemblies that were used during any crash may have been stressed or damaged. See your dealer to have the safety belt assemblies inspected or replaced.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the safety belt system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Have the safety belt pretensioners checked if the vehicle has been in a crash, or if the airbag readiness light stays on after you start the vehicle or while you are driving. *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *102*.

Airbag System

The vehicle has the following airbags:

- A frontal airbag for the driver.
- A frontal airbag for the front outboard passenger.

The vehicle may have the following airbags:

- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the driver.
- A seat-mounted side impact airbag for the front outboard passenger.
- A roof-rail airbag for the driver and the passenger seated directly behind the driver.
- A roof-rail airbag for the front outboard passenger and the passenger seated directly behind the front outboard passenger.

All vehicle airbags have the word AIRBAG on the trim or on a label near the deployment opening.

For frontal airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the center of the steering wheel for the driver and on the instrument panel for the front outboard passenger.

For seat-mounted side impact airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the side of the seatback closest to the door.

For roof-rail airbags, the word AIRBAG is on the ceiling or trim.

⚠ Warning

Be sure that cargo is not near an airbag. In a crash, an inflating airbag might force that object toward a person. This could cause severe injury or even death. Secure objects away from the area in which an airbag would inflate. *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *65*. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*.

Airbags are designed to supplement the protection provided by safety belts. Even though today's airbags are also designed to help reduce

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the risk of injury from the force of an inflating bag, all airbags must inflate very quickly to do their job.

Here are the most important things to know about the airbag system:

⚠ Warning

You can be severely injured or killed in a crash if you are not wearing your safety belt, even with airbags. Airbags are designed to work with safety belts, not replace them. Also, airbags are not designed to inflate in every crash. In some crashes safety belts are the only restraint. *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *66*.

Wearing your safety belt during a crash helps reduce the chance of hitting things inside the vehicle or being ejected from it. Airbags are “supplemental restraints” to the safety belts. Everyone in the vehicle should wear a safety belt properly, whether or not there is an airbag for that person.

⚠ Warning

Because airbags inflate with great force and faster than the blink of an eye, anyone who is up against, or very close to any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Do not sit unnecessarily close to any airbag, as you would be if sitting on the edge of the seat or leaning forward. Safety belts help keep you in position before and during a crash. Always wear a safety belt, even with airbags. The driver should sit as far back as possible while still maintaining control of the vehicle. The safety belts and the front outboard passenger airbags are most effective when you are sitting well back and upright in the seat with both feet on the floor.

Occupants should not lean on or sleep against the door or side windows in seating positions with seat-mounted side impact airbags and/or roof-rail airbags.

⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Always secure children properly in the vehicle. *Older Children* ⇨ *72*. *Infants and Young Children* ⇨ *73*.

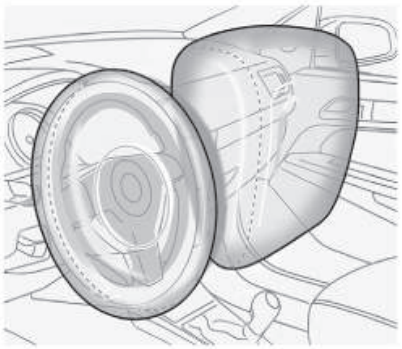


There is an airbag readiness light on the instrument cluster, which shows the airbag symbol.

The system checks the airbag electrical system for malfunctions. The light tells you if there is an electrical problem. *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *102*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Where Are the Airbags?



The driver frontal airbag is in the middle of the steering wheel.

The front outboard passenger frontal airbag is in the passenger side instrument panel.



If the vehicle has seat-mounted side impact airbags for the driver and front outboard passenger, they are in the side of the seatbacks closest to the door.



If the vehicle has roof-rail airbags for the driver, front outboard passenger, and second row outboard passengers, they are in the ceiling above the side windows.

⚠ Warning

If something is between an occupant and an airbag, the airbag might not inflate properly or it might force the object into that person causing severe injury or even death. The path of an inflating airbag must be kept clear. Do not put anything

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

between an occupant and an airbag, and do not attach or put anything on the steering wheel hub or on or near any other airbag covering.

Do not use seat accessories that block the inflation path of a seat-mounted side impact airbag.

Never secure anything to the roof of a vehicle with roof-rail airbags by routing a rope or tie-down through any door or window opening. If you do, the path of an inflating roof-rail airbag will be blocked.

When Should an Airbag Inflate?

This vehicle is equipped with airbags. *Airbag System* ⇨ *63*. Airbags are designed to inflate if the impact exceeds the specific airbag system's deployment threshold. Deployment thresholds are used to predict how severe a crash is likely to be in time for the airbags to inflate and help restrain the occupants. Deployment thresholds can vary with specific vehicle design.

Frontal airbags are designed to inflate in moderate to severe frontal or near frontal crashes to help reduce the potential for severe injuries, mainly to the driver's or front outboard passenger's head and chest.

Whether the frontal airbags will or should inflate is not based primarily on how fast the vehicle is traveling. It depends on what is hit, the direction of the impact, and how quickly the vehicle slows down.

Frontal airbags may inflate at different crash speeds depending on whether the vehicle hits an object straight on or at an angle, and whether the object is fixed or moving, rigid or deformable, narrow or wide.

Frontal airbags are not intended to inflate during vehicle rollovers, rear impacts, or in many side impacts. Always wear your safety belt, even with frontal airbags.

Seat-mounted side impact airbags, if equipped, are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. Seat-mounted side impact airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts.
A seat-mounted side impact airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

Roof-rail airbags, if equipped, are designed to inflate in moderate to severe side crashes depending on the location of the impact. Roof-rail airbags are not designed to inflate in frontal impacts, near frontal impacts, rollovers, or rear impacts. A roof-rail airbag is designed to inflate on the side of the vehicle that is struck.

In any particular crash, no one can say whether an airbag should have inflated simply because of the vehicle damage or repair costs.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

What Makes an Airbag Inflate?

In a deployment event, the sensing system sends an electrical signal triggering a release of gas from the inflator. Gas from the inflator fills the airbag causing the bag to break out of the cover. The inflator, the airbag, and related hardware are all part of the airbag module.

Where Are the Airbags? ⇨ *65*.

How Does an Airbag Restrain?

In moderate to severe frontal or near frontal collisions, even belted occupants can contact the steering wheel or the instrument panel. In moderate to severe side collisions, even belted occupants can contact the inside of the vehicle.

Airbags supplement the protection provided by safety belts by distributing the force of the impact more evenly over the occupant's body.

But airbags would not help in many types of collisions, primarily because the occupant's motion is not toward those airbags. *When Should an Airbag Inflate?* ⇨ *66*.

Airbags should never be regarded as anything more than a supplement to safety belts.

What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates?

After the frontal airbags and seat-mounted side impact airbags inflate, they quickly deflate, so quickly that some people may not even realize an airbag inflated. Roof-rail airbags may still be at least partially inflated for some time after they inflate. Some components of the airbag module may be hot for several minutes. *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *65*.

The parts of the airbag that come into contact with you may be warm, but not too hot to touch. There may be some smoke and dust coming from the vents in the deflated airbags. Airbag inflation does not prevent the driver from seeing out of the windshield or being able to steer the vehicle, nor does it prevent people from leaving the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

When an airbag inflates, there may be dust in the air. This dust could cause breathing problems for people with a history of asthma or other breathing trouble. To avoid this, everyone in the vehicle should get out as soon as it is safe to do so. If you have breathing problems but cannot get out of the vehicle after an airbag inflates, then get fresh air by opening a window or a door. If you experience breathing problems following an airbag deployment, you should seek medical attention.

The vehicle has a feature that may automatically unlock the doors, turn the interior lamps on, turn the hazard warning flashers on, and shut off the fuel system after the airbags inflate. You can lock the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

doors, turn the interior lamps off, and turn the hazard warning flashers off by using the controls for those features.

⚠ Warning

A crash severe enough to inflate the airbags may have also damaged important functions in the vehicle, such as the fuel system, brake and steering systems, etc. Even if the vehicle appears to be drivable after a moderate crash, there may be concealed damage that could make it difficult to safely operate the vehicle.

Use caution if you should attempt to restart the engine after a crash has occurred.

In many crashes severe enough to inflate the airbag, windshields are broken by vehicle deformation. Additional windshield breakage may also occur from the front outboard passenger airbag.

- Airbags are designed to inflate only once. After an airbag inflates, you will need some new parts for the airbag system. If you do not get them, the airbag system will not be there to help protect you in another crash. A new system will include airbag modules and possibly other parts. The service manual for the vehicle covers the need to replace other parts.
- The vehicle has a crash sensing and diagnostic module which records information after a crash. *Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy* ⇨ *308*. *Event Data Recorders* ⇨ *308*.
- Let only qualified technicians work on the airbag systems. Improper service can mean that an airbag system will not work properly. See your dealer for service.

Airbag On-Off Switch

The vehicle has an airbag on-off switch on the side of the instrument panel, visible when the front passenger door is open. This switch is used to manually turn on or off the front passenger frontal airbag.



This switch should only be turned to the OFF position if the person in the front passenger position falls under the conditions specified in this manual as follows:

Infant: An infant (less than 1 year old) must ride in the front seat because of any of the following.

- The vehicle has no rear seat.
- The vehicle has a rear seat too small to accommodate a rear-facing infant seat.
- The infant has a medical condition which, according to the infant's physician, makes it necessary for the infant to ride in

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

Child age 1 to 12: A child aged 1 to 12 must ride in the front seat because of any of the following.

- The vehicle has no rear seat.
- Although children aged 1 to 12 ride in the rear seat(s) whenever possible, children aged 1 to 12 sometimes must ride in the front because no space is available in the rear seat(s) of the vehicle.
- The child has a medical condition which, according to the child's physician, makes it necessary for the child to ride in the front seat so that the driver can constantly monitor the child's condition.

Medical Condition: A passenger has a medical condition which, according to his or her physician does both of the following.

- Causes the passenger airbags to pose a special risk for the passenger.
- Makes the potential harm from the passenger airbags in a crash greater than the potential harm from turning off the airbags and allowing the passenger, even if belted, to hit the dashboard or windshield in a crash.

⚠ Warning

If the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is turned off for a person who does not fall under the conditions specified in this manual, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there. Do not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag unless the person sitting there falls under the conditions specified in this manual.



To turn off the front passenger frontal airbag, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the OFF position. The belt pretensioners and all driver airbag systems will remain active.

Vehicles equipped with an airbag on-off switch also have a passenger airbag status indicator. This indicator is above the glove box, in the instrument panel. See Airbag On-Off Light for additional information.

When the front passenger frontal airbag is turned off, the passenger airbag off light, in the passenger airbag status indicator, comes on to let you know the airbag is off. The

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

front passenger frontal airbag will remain off until you turn it back on again.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the front outboard passenger frontal airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See Airbag Readiness Light for more information, including important safety information.



To turn the front passenger frontal airbag on again, insert any key or a coin into the switch, push in, and move the switch to the ON position.

The front passenger frontal airbag is now enabled (may inflate). When the airbag is turned on, the passenger airbag off light, in the passenger airbag status indicator, goes out.

Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Airbags affect how the vehicle should be serviced. There are parts of the airbag system in several places around the vehicle. Your dealer and the service manual have information about servicing the vehicle and the airbag system.

⚠ Warning

For up to 10 seconds after the vehicle is turned off and the battery is disconnected, an airbag can still inflate during improper service. You can be injured if you are close to an airbag when it inflates. Avoid yellow connectors. They are probably part of the airbag system. Be sure to follow proper service procedures, and make sure the person performing work for you is qualified to do so.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle

Adding accessories that change the vehicle's frame, bumper system, height, front end or side sheet metal, may keep the airbag system from working properly.

The operation of the airbag system can also be affected by changing any parts of the front seats, safety belts, the airbag sensing and diagnostic module, steering wheel,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

instrument panel, any of the airbag modules, ceiling or pillar garnish trim, front sensors, side impact sensors, or airbag wiring.

Your dealer and the service manual have information about the location of the airbag sensors, sensing and diagnostic module, and airbag wiring.

If you have to modify your vehicle because you have a disability and have questions about whether the modifications will affect the vehicle's airbag system, or if you have questions about whether the airbag system will be affected if the vehicle is modified for any other reason, contact your dealer.

Airbag System Check

The airbag system does not need regularly scheduled maintenance or replacement. Make sure the airbag readiness light is working. *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *102*.

Caution

If an airbag covering is damaged, opened, or broken, the airbag may not work properly. Do not open or break the airbag coverings. If there are any opened or broken airbag coverings, have the airbag covering and/or airbag module replaced. *Where Are the Airbags?* ⇨ *65*. See your dealer for service.

Replacing Airbag System Parts after a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the airbag systems in the vehicle.
A damaged airbag system may not work properly and may not protect you and your passenger(s) in a crash, resulting in serious injury or even death. To help make sure the airbag

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

systems are working properly after a crash, have them inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

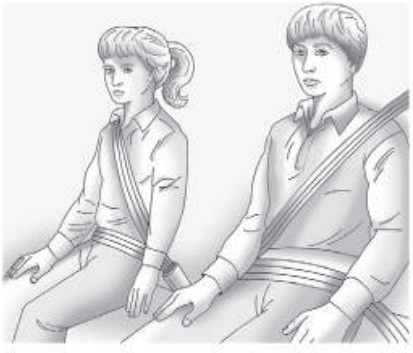
If an airbag inflates, you will need to replace airbag system parts. See your dealer for service.

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on when you are driving, the airbag system may not work properly. Have the vehicle serviced right away. *Airbag Readiness Light* ⇨ *102*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Child Restraints

Older Children



Older children who have outgrown booster seats should wear the vehicle safety belts.

The manufacturer's instructions that come with the booster seat state the weight and height limitations for that booster. Use a booster seat with a lap-shoulder belt until the child passes the fit test below:

- Sit all the way back on the seat. Do the knees bend at the seat edge? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Buckle the lap-shoulder belt. Does the shoulder belt rest on the shoulder? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Does the lap belt fit low and snug on the hips, touching the thighs? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.
- Can proper safety belt fit be maintained for the length of the trip? If yes, continue. If no, return to the booster seat.

If you have the choice, a child should sit in a position with a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide.

Q: What is the proper way to wear safety belts?

A: An older child should wear a lap-shoulder belt and get the additional restraint a shoulder belt can provide. The shoulder belt should not cross the face or neck. The lap belt should fit snugly below the hips, just touching the top of the thighs. This applies belt force to the child's pelvic bones in a crash. It should never be worn over the abdomen, which could cause severe or even fatal internal injuries in a crash.

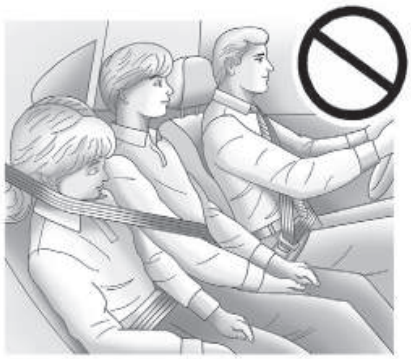
According to accident statistics, children are safer when properly restrained in a rear seating position.

In a crash, children who are not buckled up can strike other people who are buckled up, or can be thrown out of the vehicle. Older children need to use safety belts properly.

⚠ Warning

Never allow more than one child to wear the same safety belt. The safety belt cannot properly spread the impact forces. In a crash, they can be crushed together and seriously injured. A safety belt must be used by only one person at a time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



⚠ Warning

Never allow a child to wear the safety belt with the shoulder belt behind their back. A child can be seriously injured by not wearing the lap-shoulder belt properly. In a crash, the child would not be restrained by the shoulder belt. The child could move too far forward increasing the chance of head and neck injury. The child might also slide under the lap belt. The belt force would then be applied right on the abdomen.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

That could cause serious or fatal injuries. The shoulder belt should go over the shoulder and across the chest.



Infants and Young Children

Everyone in a vehicle needs protection! This includes infants and all other children. Neither the distance traveled nor the age and size of the traveler changes the need, for everyone, to use safety restraints.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Never leave children unattended in a vehicle and never allow children to play with the safety belts.

Every time infants and young children ride in vehicles, they should have the protection provided by appropriate child restraints. Neither the vehicle's safety belt system nor its airbag system is designed for them.

Children who are not restrained properly can strike other people, or can be thrown out of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Never hold an infant or a child while riding in a vehicle. Due to crash forces, an infant or a child will become so heavy it is not possible to hold it during a crash. For example, in a crash at only 40 km/h (25 mph), a 5.5 kg (12 lb) infant will suddenly become a 110 kg (240 lb) force on a person's arms. An infant should be secured in an appropriate restraint.



⚠ Warning

Children who are up against, or very close to, any airbag when it inflates can be seriously injured or killed. Never put a rear-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat. Secure a rear-facing child restraint in a rear seat. It is also better to secure a forward-facing child restraint in a rear seat. If you must secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard seat, always move the front passenger seat as far back as it will go.





Q: What are the different types of add-on child restraints?

A: Add-on child restraints, which are purchased by the vehicle's owner, are available in four basic types. Selection of a particular restraint should take into consideration not only the child's weight, height, and age but also whether or not the restraint will be compatible with the motor vehicle in which it will be used.

For most basic types of child restraints, there are many different models available. When purchasing a child restraint, be sure it is designed to be used in a motor vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The restraint manufacturer's instructions that come with the restraint state the weight and height limitations for a particular child restraint.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of neck and head injury during a crash, infants need complete support. In a crash, if an infant is in a rear-facing child restraint, the crash forces can be distributed across the strongest part of an infant's body, the back and shoulders. Infants should always be secured in rear-facing child restraints.

⚠ Warning

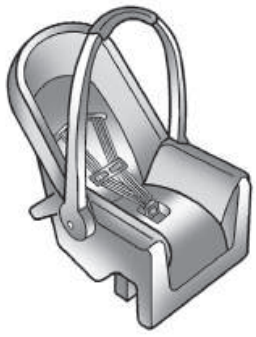
A young child's hip bones are still so small that the vehicle's regular safety belt may not remain low on the hip bones, as it should. Instead, it may settle up around

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

the child's abdomen. In a crash, the belt would apply force on a body area that is unprotected by any bony structure. This alone could cause serious or fatal injuries. To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, young children should always be secured in appropriate child restraints.

Child Restraint Systems



Rear-Facing Infant Seat

A rear-facing infant seat provides restraint with the seating surface against the back of the infant.

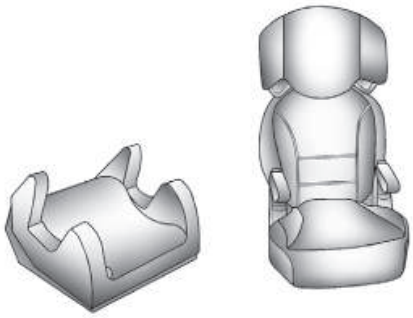
The harness system holds the infant in place and, in a crash, acts to keep the infant positioned in the restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Forward-Facing Child Seat

A forward-facing child seat provides restraint for the child's body with the harness.



Booster Seats

A booster seat is a child restraint designed to improve the fit of the vehicle's safety belt system.
A booster seat can also help a child to see out the window.

Securing an Add-On Child Restraint in the Vehicle

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle. Secure the child

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

restraint properly in the vehicle using the vehicle safety belt or LATCH system, following the instructions that came with that child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

To help reduce the chance of injury, the child restraint must be secured in the vehicle. Child restraint systems must be secured in vehicle seats by lap belts or the lap belt portion of a lap-shoulder belt, or by the LATCH system. *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *78*. Children can be endangered in a crash if the child restraint is not properly secured in the vehicle.

When securing an add-on child restraint, refer to the instructions that come with the restraint which may be on the restraint itself or in a booklet, or both, and to this manual. The child restraint instructions are

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

important, so if they are not available, obtain a replacement copy from the manufacturer.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Securing the Child within the Child Restraint

⚠ Warning

A child can be seriously injured or killed in a crash if the child is not properly secured in the child restraint. Secure the child properly following the instructions that came with that child restraint.

Where to Put the Restraint

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position.

Whenever possible, children age 12 and under should be secured in a rear seating position.



DO NOT place a rear-facing child seat on this seat unless the airbag is off. DEATH OR SERIOUS INJURY can occur. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great, if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

Never use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat.

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger airbag inflates and the passenger seat is in a forward position. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

Child restraints and booster seats vary considerably in size, and some may fit in certain seating positions better than others. Always make sure the child restraint is properly secured.

Depending on where you place the child restraint and the size of the child restraint, you may not be able to access adjacent safety belt assemblies or LATCH anchors for additional passengers or child restraints. Adjacent seating positions should not be used if the child restraint prevents access to or interferes with the routing of the safety belt.

Wherever a child restraint is installed, be sure to secure the child restraint properly.

Keep in mind that an unsecured child restraint can move around in a collision or sudden stop and injure people in the vehicle. Be sure to properly secure any child restraint in the vehicle — even when no child is in it.

Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)

The LATCH system secures a child restraint during driving or in a crash. LATCH attachments on the child restraint are used to attach the child restraint to the anchors in the vehicle. The LATCH system is designed to make installation of a child restraint easier.

In order to use the LATCH system in your vehicle, you need a child restraint that has LATCH attachments. LATCH-compatible rear-facing and forward-facing child seats can be properly installed using either the LATCH anchors or the vehicle's safety belts. Do not use both the safety belts and the LATCH anchorage system to secure a rear-facing or forward-facing child seat.

Booster seats use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the child in the booster seat. If the manufacturer recommends that the booster seat be secured with the LATCH system, this can be done as long as the booster seat can be positioned properly and there is no interference with the proper positioning of the lap-shoulder belt on the child.

Make sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint, and also the instructions in this manual.

When installing a child restraint with a top tether, you must also use either the lower anchors or the safety belts to properly secure the child restraint. A child restraint must never be attached using only the top tether.

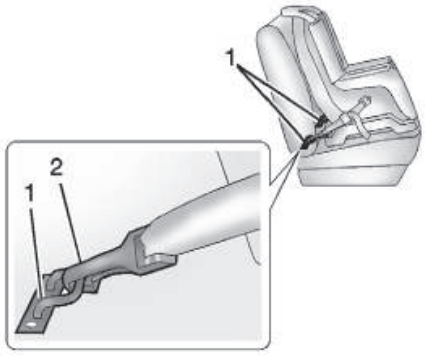
The LATCH anchorage system can be used until the combined weight of the child plus the child restraint is 29.5 kg (65 lbs). Use the safety belt alone instead of the LATCH anchorage system once the combined weight is more than 29.5 kg (65 lbs).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The following explains how to attach a child restraint with these attachments in the vehicle.

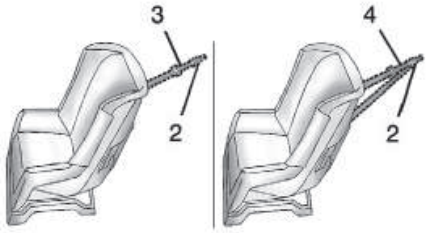
Not all vehicle seating positions or child restraints have lower anchors and attachments or top tether anchors and attachments. In this case, the safety belt must be used (with top tether where available) to secure the child restraint. See *Securing Child Restraints (Rear seat)* ⇨ *83* or *Securing Child Restraints (Front passenger seat)* ⇨ *85*.

Lower Anchors



Lower anchors (1) are metal bars built into the vehicle. There are two lower anchors for each LATCH seating position that will accommodate a child restraint with lower attachments (2).

Top Tether Anchor



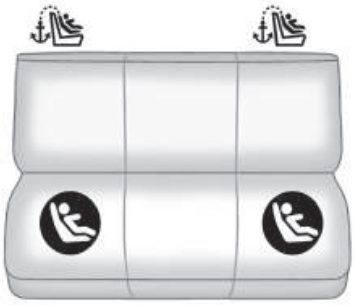
A top tether (3, 4) anchors the top of the child restraint to the vehicle. A top tether anchor is built into the vehicle. The top tether attachment (2) on the child restraint connects to the top tether anchor in the vehicle in order to reduce the forward movement and rotation of the child restraint during driving or in a crash.

The child restraint may have a single tether (3) or a dual tether (4). Either will have a single attachment (2) to secure the top tether to the anchor.

Some child restraints that have a top tether are designed for use with or without the top tether being attached. Others require the top tether always to be attached. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for your child restraint.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lower Anchor and Top Tether Anchor Locations



Rear Seat

: Seating positions with top tether anchors.

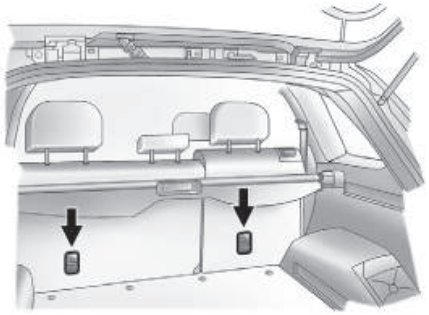
: Seating positions with two lower anchors.



To assist in locating the lower anchors, each seating position with lower anchors has two labels, near the crease between the seatback and the seat cushion.



To assist in locating the top tether anchors, the top tether anchor symbol is near the anchor.



Top Tether Anchors

The top tether anchors for the outboard rear seating position are on the back of the rear seatback. Be sure to use an anchor on the same side of the vehicle as the seating position where the child restraint will be placed.

Do not secure a child restraint in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be attached, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top tether must be attached.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

According to accident statistics, children and infants are safer when properly restrained in a child restraint system or infant restraint system secured in a rear seating position. *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ 77.

Securing a Child Restraint Designed for the LATCH System

⚠ Warning

If a LATCH-type child restraint is not attached to anchors, the child restraint will not be able to protect the child correctly. In a crash, the child could be seriously injured or killed. Install a LATCH-type child restraint properly using the anchors, or use the vehicle's safety belts to secure the restraint, following the instructions that came with the child restraint and the instructions in this manual.

⚠ Warning

To reduce the risk of serious or fatal injuries during a crash, do not attach more than one child restraint to a single anchor. Attaching more than one child restraint to a single anchor could cause the anchor or attachment to come loose or even break during a crash. A child or others could be injured.

⚠ Warning

Children can be seriously injured or strangled if a shoulder belt is wrapped around their neck and the safety belt continues to tighten. Buckle any unused safety belts behind the child restraint so children cannot reach them. Pull the shoulder belt all the way out of the retractor to set the lock, if the vehicle has one, after the child restraint has been installed.

Caution

Do not let the LATCH attachments rub against the vehicle's safety belts. This may damage these parts. If necessary, move buckled safety belts to avoid rubbing the LATCH attachments.

Do not fold the rear seatback when the seat is occupied. Do not fold the empty rear seat with a safety belt buckled. This could damage the safety belt or the seat. Unbuckle and return the safety belt to its stowed position, before folding the seat.

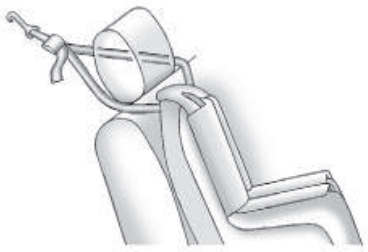
If you need to secure more than one child restraint in the rear seat. *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ 77.

This system is designed to make the installation of child restraints easier. When using lower anchors, do not use the vehicle's safety belts. Instead, use the vehicle's anchors and child restraint attachments to

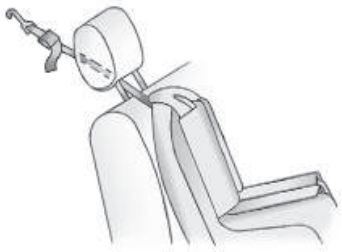
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

secure the restraints. Some restraints also use another vehicle anchor to secure a top tether.

1. Attach and fasten the lower attachments to the lower anchors. If the child restraint does not have lower attachments or the desired seating position does not have lower anchors, secure the child restraint with the top tether and the safety belts. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions and the instructions in this manual.
   1.1. Find the lower anchors for the desired seating position. Make sure there are no foreign objects around lower anchors. Foreign objects can interfere with the proper latching of the child restraint to the anchors.
   1.2. Put the child restraint on the seat.
   1.3. Attach and fasten the lower attachments on the child restraint to the lower anchors.
2. If the child restraint manufacturer recommends that the top tether be attached, attach and tighten the top tether to the top tether anchor, if equipped. Refer to the child restraint instructions and the following steps:
   2.1. Find the top tether anchor.
   2.2. You may need to adjust the rear compartment storage panel/cover in the rear cargo area to access the anchors.
   2.3. Route, attach, and tighten the top tether according to your child restraint instructions and the following instructions:



If the rear outboard seating position you are using has an adjustable headrest or head restraint and you are using a dual tether, route the tether around the headrest or head restraint.



If the rear outboard seating position you are using has an adjustable

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

headrest or head restraint and you are using a single tether, raise the headrest or head restraint and route the tether under the headrest or head restraint and in between the headrest or head restraint posts.

3. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. Refer to your child restraint manufacturer instructions.

Replacing LATCH System Parts After a Crash

⚠ Warning

A crash can damage the LATCH system in the vehicle. A damaged LATCH system may not properly secure the child restraint, resulting in serious injury or even death in a crash. To help make sure the LATCH system is

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

working properly after a crash, see your dealer to have the system inspected and any necessary replacements made as soon as possible.

If the vehicle has the LATCH system and it was being used during a crash, new LATCH system parts may be needed.

New parts and repairs may be necessary even if the LATCH system was not being used at the time of the crash.

Securing Child Restraints (Rear seat)

When securing a child restraint in a rear seating position, study the instructions that came with the child restraint to make sure it is compatible with this vehicle.

If the child restraint has the LATCH system, *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *78* for how and where to install the child restraint using LATCH. If a child restraint is secured in the vehicle using a safety belt and it uses a top tether, *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *78* for top tether anchor locations.

Do not secure a child seat in a position without a top tether anchor if a national or local law requires that the top tether be anchored, or if the instructions that come with the child restraint say that the top strap must be anchored.

If the child restraint does not have the LATCH system, you will be using the safety belt to secure the child restraint in this position. Be sure to follow the instructions that came with the child restraint. Secure the child in the child restraint when and as the instructions say.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

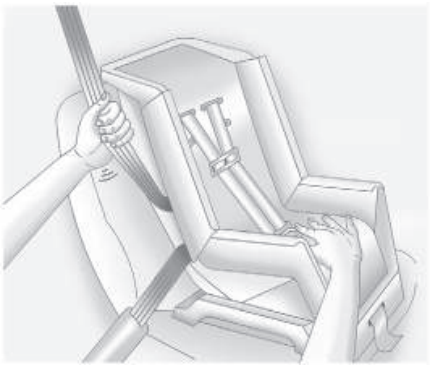
If more than one child restraint needs to be installed in the rear seat, be sure to read *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ *77*.

1. Put the child restraint on the seat.
2. Pick up the latch plate, and run the lap and shoulder portions of the vehicle's safety belt through or around the restraint. The child restraint instructions will show you how.



3. Push the latch plate into the buckle until it clicks.

   Position the release button on the buckle so that the safety belt could be quickly unbuckled if necessary.



4. To tighten the belt, push down on the child restraint, pull the shoulder portion of the belt to tighten the lap portion of the belt and feed the shoulder belt back into the retractor. When installing a forward-facing child restraint, it may be helpful to use your knee to push down on the child restraint as you tighten the belt.

   If the child restraint system has a lock-off mechanism, use it to secure the vehicle safety belt.

5. If the child restraint has a top tether, follow the child restraint manufacturer's instructions regarding the use of the top tether. *Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System)* ⇨ *78* for more information.
6. Before placing a child in the child restraint, make sure it is securely held in place. To check, push and pull the child restraint in different directions to be sure it is secure.

To remove the child restraint, unbuckle the vehicle safety belt and let it return to the stowed position. If the top tether is attached to a top tether anchor, disconnect it.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Securing Child Restraints (Front passenger seat)

This vehicle has airbags. A rear seat is a safer place to secure a forward-facing child restraint. *Where to Put the Restraint* ⇨ 77.

Never put a rear-facing child seat in the front. This is because the risk to the rear-facing child is so great if the airbag deploys.

⚠ Warning

A child in a rear-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the passenger airbag inflates. This is because the back of the rear-facing child restraint would be very close to the inflating airbag. Secure rear-facing child restraints in a rear seat.

A child in a forward-facing child restraint can be seriously injured or killed if the front outboard passenger airbag inflates and the

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

passenger seat is in a forward position. If you secure a forward-facing child restraint in the front outboard passenger seat, always move the passenger seat as far back as it will go. It is better to secure the child restraint in a rear seat.

If the vehicle does not have a rear seat that will accommodate a child restraint, a child restraint should not be installed in the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Storage

Storage Compartments
Storage Compartments 86
Glove Box 86
Cupholders 86
Front Storage 86
Sunglasses Storage 87
Underseat Storage 87
Center Console Storage 87

Additional Storage Features
Cargo Cover 88
Cargo Management System . . . 88
Convenience Net 88
Warning Triangle 89

Roof Rack System
Roof Rack System 89

Storage Compartments

⚠ Warning

Do not store heavy or sharp objects in storage compartments. In a crash, these objects may cause the cover to open and could result in injury.

Glove Box

Open the glove box by lifting up on the lever.

Cupholders

There are cupholders in the center console.

Front Storage



The Storage compartment (1) are located on the instrument panel.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sunglasses Storage

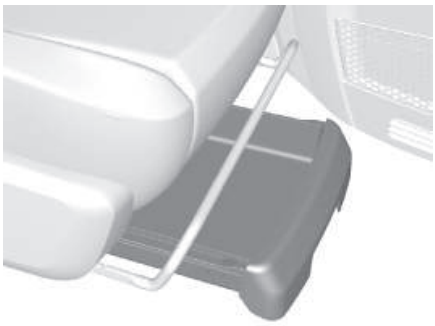


If equipped, the sunglasses holder is in the overhead console. To open it, push on the rear of the cover.

Close it by pushing up until it latches.

Do not use for storing heavy objects.

Underseat Storage



To use the front passenger seat undertray, pull up on the end of the tray and pull it toward the instrument panel. Push the tray toward the seat to return it to its original position.

Center Console Storage

Front Console



The front console has an upper and lower storage area.

Pull up on the lower lever to access the lower storage area.

Pull up on the upper lever to access the upper storage area.

The front console can be used as an armrest.

Rear Console

Lift the cover on the rear console armrest to access the storage area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Additional Storage Features

Cargo Cover

For vehicles with a cargo cover, use it to cover items in the rear of the vehicle.

To remove the cover from the vehicle, pull both ends toward each other. To reinstall, place each end of the cover in the holes behind the rear seat.

Cargo Management System

Caution
Do not allow items in the storage area to extend outside the storage area when the cover is closed. Otherwise the storage or luggage floor may be damaged. Only store items that fit into the floor storage area or that allow for the cover to be closed.

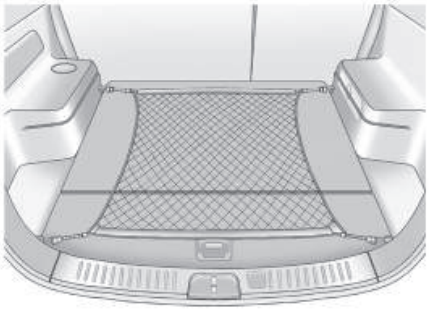
This vehicle has a cargo management system located in the rear of the vehicle.

Lift the cover up to open and access the storage bin. The cover remains open when lifted.

There are floor side trays on both sides of the luggage compartment floor.

Convenience Net

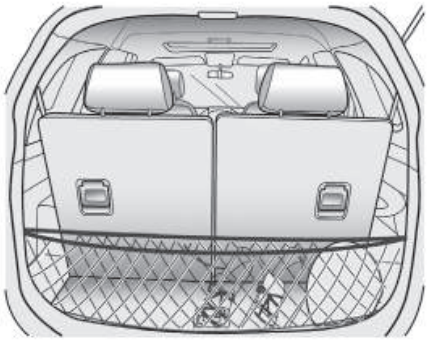
Luggage floor net



The luggage floor net can help keep small loads from moving during sharp turns or quick starts and stops.

Attach the four net hooks in the metal rings on the each corner of the floor.

Luggage holder net



You can carry small loads with your optional luggage holding net.

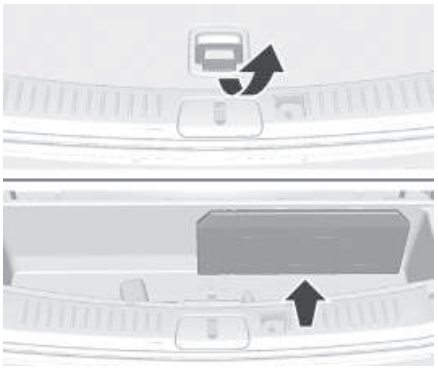
To install the net, hang each loop in the upper corner of the net to both anchors of the back panel and two net hooks in the metal rings on the both lower corner of the floor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

The luggage holding net is designed for small loads. Do not carry heavy objects in your luggage holding net.

Warning Triangle



The warning triangle is stored under the luggage compartment floor.

To pull out the warning triangle, lift the luggage compartment floor handle upward.

Roof Rack System

⚠ Warning

If something is carried on top of the vehicle that is longer or wider than the roof rack — like paneling, plywood, or a mattress — the wind can catch it while the vehicle is being driven. The item being carried could be violently torn off, and this could cause a collision and damage the vehicle. Never carry something longer or wider than the roof rack on top of the vehicle unless using a GM certified accessory carrier.

If equipped, the roof rack can be used to load items. For roof racks that do not have crossrails included, GM certified crossrails can be purchased as an accessory. See your dealer.

Caution

Loading cargo on the roof rack that weighs more than 100 kg (220 lb) or hangs over the rear or sides of the vehicle may damage the vehicle. Load cargo so that it rests evenly between the crossrails, making sure to fasten cargo securely.



To prevent damage or loss of cargo when driving, check to make sure crossrails and cargo are securely fastened. Loading cargo on the roof rack will make the vehicle's center

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking, or abrupt maneuvers; otherwise it may result in loss of control. If driving for a long distance, on rough roads, or at high speeds, occasionally stop the vehicle to make sure the cargo remains in its place. Do not exceed the maximum vehicle capacity when loading the vehicle. For more information on vehicle capacity and loading. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instruments and Controls

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment 92
Steering Wheel Controls 92
Horn 93
Windshield Wiper/Washer 93
Rear Window Wiper/Washer ... 94
Headlamp Washer 95
Power Outlets 95

Warning Lights

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 97
Instrument Cluster 98
Speedometer 100
Odometer 100
Trip Odometer 100
Tachometer 101
Fuel Gauge 101
Safety Belt Reminders 102
Airbag Readiness Light 102
Airbag On-Off Light 103
Charging System Light 104
Malfunction Indicator Lamp ... 104
Service Vehicle Soon Light ... 106
Brake System Warning Light 106
Electric Parking Brake Light 107
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light 107
Up-Shift Light 108
All-Wheel-Drive Light 108
Descent Control System Light 108
Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light 109
Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light 109
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light 109
Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light 109
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light 110
Pre-Heat Light 111
Tire Pressure Light 111
Diesel Particulate Filter Light 111
Engine Oil Pressure Light 112
Low Engine Oil Level Light ... 113
Change Engine Oil Light 113
Fuel Economy Light 113
Low Fuel Warning Light 114
Water in Fuel Warning Light 114
Security Light 114
Immobilizer Light 114
Reduced Engine Power Light 115
High-Beam On Light 115
Front Fog Lamp Light 115
Rear Fog Lamp Light 115
Lamps On Reminder 115
Cruise Control Light 116
Trailer Indicator Light 116
Door Ajar Light 116
Gate Ajar Light 116

Vehicle Messages

Vehicle Messages 116
Brake System Messages 116
Key and Lock Messages 116
Transmission Messages 117

Trip Computer

Trip Computer 117

Vehicle Personalization

Vehicle Personalization 119

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Controls

Steering Wheel Adjustment



Tilt Wheel

If equipped with a tilt wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Tilt and Telescoping Wheel

If equipped with a tilt and telescoping wheel:

1. Hold the steering wheel and pull the lever down.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down.
3. Pull or push the steering wheel closer or away from you.
4. Pull the lever up to lock the steering wheel in place.

Do not adjust the steering wheel while driving.

Caution
If the steering wheel is turned until it reached the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 10 seconds, damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

Steering Wheel Controls



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The Infotainment system, the cruise control and a connected mobile phone can be operated via the controls on the steering wheel.

Further information is available in the Infotainment system manual.

Overview ⇨ *131*.

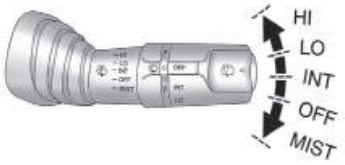
Cruise Control ⇨ *207*.

Horn

Press on the steering wheel pad to sound the horn.

Windshield Wiper/Washer

The windshield wiper lever is located on the side of the steering column. The ignition must be turned to ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN to operate the windshield wipers.



Move the lever to one of the following positions:

HI : Fast wipes.

LO : Slow wipes.

INT (Intermittent) : Move to this position for a delayed wiping cycle. Turn the band on the windshield wiper toward F for more frequent wipes or S for less frequent wipes. The wipe cycle delay time is affected by the vehicle speed. As the vehicle speed increases, the delay time will automatically decrease.

OFF : Turns the windshield wipers off.

MIST : For a single wipe, briefly move the lever down, and release. The lever automatically returns to its starting position.

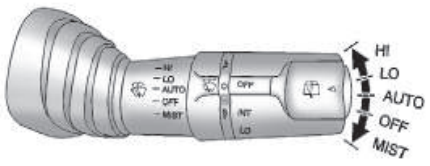
Clear ice and snow from the wiper blades before using them. If frozen to the windshield, carefully loosen or thaw them. Damaged blades should be replaced. *Wiper Blade Replacement* ⇨ *247*.

Heavy snow or ice can overload the wipers. A circuit breaker stops them until the motor cools.

Automatic Windshield Wipers with Rainsense™

If equipped with automatic windshield wipers with Rainsense, the rain sensor detects the amount of water on the windshield and automatically adjusts the windshield wipers.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



AUTO : Turns the windshield wipers on automatically.

The sensitivity of the system can be adjusted by turning the band on the windshield wiper lever toward F or S.

If the ignition switch is turned to ACC/ACCESSORY while the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windshield wipers turn on once to check the system.

OFF : Turns the automatic windshield wiper system off.

The rain sensor is located near the top of the windshield and must be free from dust and dirt to work properly.

Windshield Washer

To use this feature the ignition must be turned to ON/RUN. Pull the windshield washer/wiper lever toward you to spray washer fluid on the windshield.

When the lever is pulled and immediately released, windshield washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield, but the windshield wipers do not turn on.

When the lever is pulled and held briefly, windshield washer fluid is sprayed onto the windshield. The wipers operate for two wipe cycles after the lever is released and one more cycle after three seconds. *Washer Fluid* ⇨ *244*.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Rear Window Wiper/ Washer

The vehicle may have a rear window wiper/washer. The ignition must be in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position to operate the rear window wiper/washer.



Turn the end of the windshield wiper lever to operate the rear window wiper/washer.

OFF : Turns the system off.

INT : Intermittent wipes.

LO : Slow wipes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To spray washer fluid on the rear window, press the button at the end of the lever until the washers begin. When the button is released, the washers stop, but the wipers continue to wipe for about three wipes.

⚠ Warning

In freezing weather, do not use the washer until the windshield is warmed. Otherwise the washer fluid can form ice on the windshield, blocking your vision.

Rear Smart Wiper

For vehicles with this feature, the rear wiper turns on automatically when the shift lever is set to R (Reverse) while the front wiper is on.

The windshield washer reservoir is used for the windshield and rear window. Check the fluid level if either washer is not working. *Washer Fluid ⇨ 244*.

Headlamp Washer

The vehicle may have headlamp washers. The headlamp washers clear debris from the headlamp lenses.



The headlamp washer button is located on the instrument panel near the exterior lamp control. The headlamps must be turned on to use this feature.

Press the button to wash the headlamps.

Washer fluid is sprayed onto the headlamps. Then the headlamp washer is disabled for about two minutes. If the washer fluid is low, the washer system cannot be turned on for about four minutes after spraying.

Washer Fluid ⇨ 244.

Power Outlets

The accessory power outlets can be used to plug in electrical equipment, such as a cell phone or an MP3 player.

The vehicle has three accessory power outlets: under the climate control system, on the rear of the center floor console, and in the rear cargo area.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine





Remove the cover to access and refix when not in use.

⚠ Warning

Power is always supplied to the outlets. Do not leave electrical equipment plugged in when the vehicle is not in use because the vehicle could catch fire and cause injury or death.

Caution

Leaving electrical equipment plugged in for an extended period of time while the vehicle is off will drain the battery. Always unplug electrical equipment when not in use and do not plug in equipment that exceeds the maximum 20 amp rating.

Certain accessory power plugs may not be compatible with the accessory power outlet and could overload vehicle or adapter fuses. If a problem is experienced, see your dealer.

When adding electrical equipment, be sure to follow the proper installation instructions included with the equipment.

Caution

Hanging heavy equipment from the power outlet can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. The power outlets are designed for accessory power plugs only, such as cell phone charge cords.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning Lights

Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators

Warning lights and gauges can signal that something is wrong before it becomes serious enough to cause an expensive repair or replacement. Paying attention to the warning lights and gauges could prevent injury.

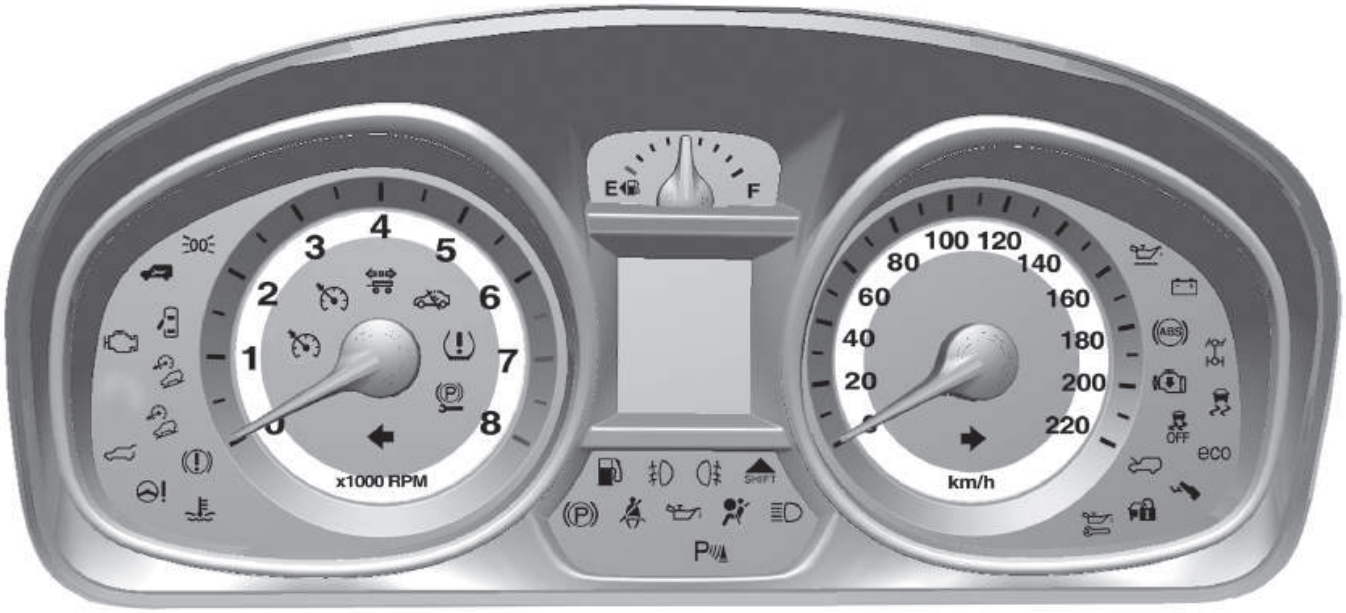
Warning lights come on when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Some warning lights come on briefly when the engine is started to indicate they are working.

Gauges can indicate when there could be a problem with a vehicle function. Often gauges and warning lights work together to indicate a problem with the vehicle.

When one of the warning lights comes on and stays on while driving, or when one of the gauges shows there may be a problem, check the section that explains what to do. Waiting to do repairs can be costly and even dangerous.

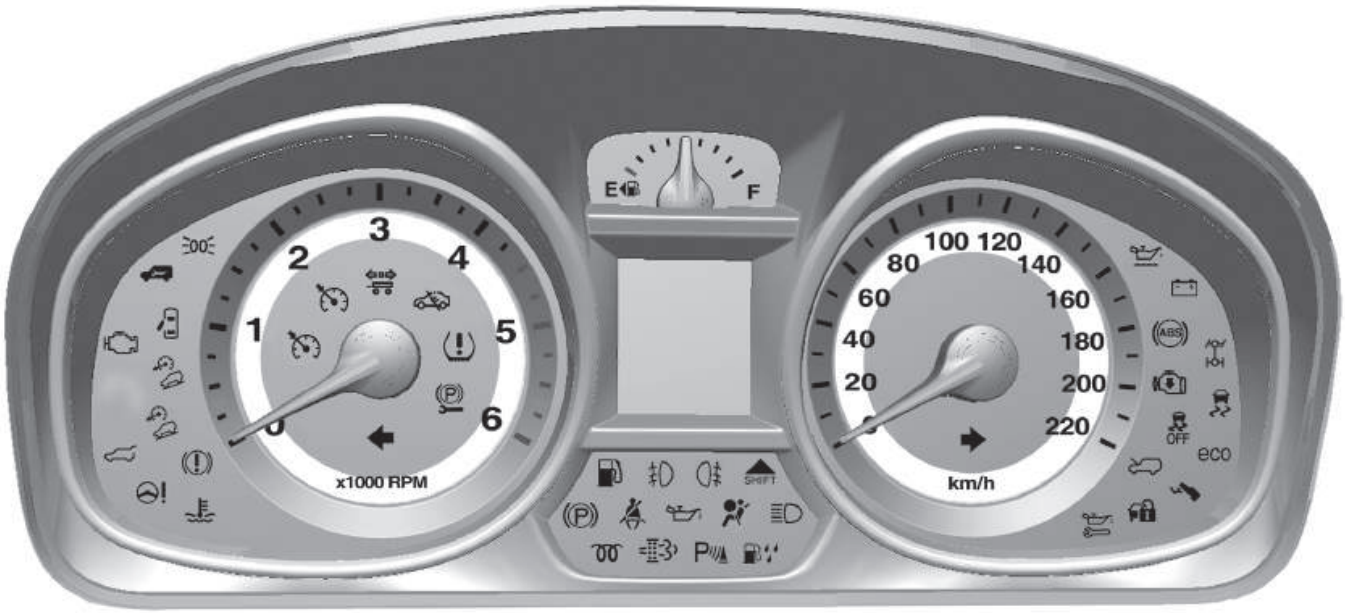
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Cluster



<Petrol>

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



<Diesel>

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

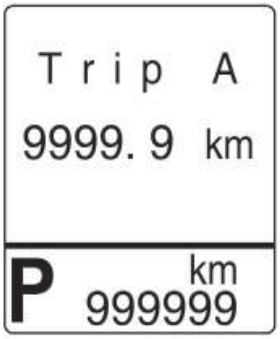
Speedometer

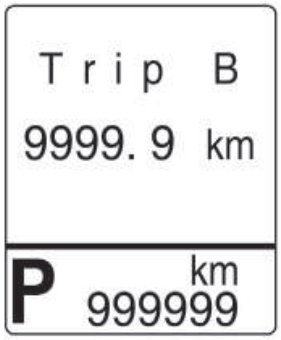
The speedometer shows the vehicle's speed in kilometers per hour (km/h).

Odometer

The odometer shows how far the vehicle has been driven in kilometers.

Trip Odometer





There are two independent trip odometers which measure the distances the vehicle has driven since the trip odometer was last set to zero.





Trip A and Trip B can be switched by pressing .

The button located near the light switch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

To set the trip odometer to zero, press and hold ✓.

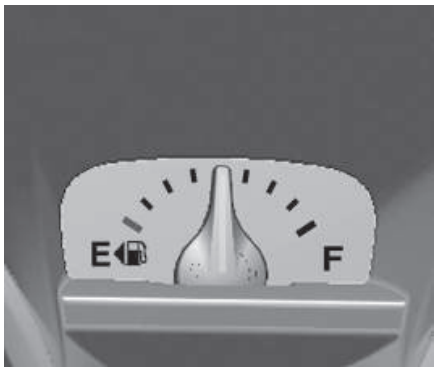
Tachometer

The tachometer displays the engine speed in revolutions per minute (rpm).

Caution

If the engine is operated with the rpm's in the warning area at the high end of the tachometer, the vehicle could be damaged, and the damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not operate the engine with the rpm's in the warning area.

Fuel Gauge



The fuel gauge indicates about how much fuel is left in the fuel tank when the ignition is on.

An arrow on the fuel gauge indicates the side of the vehicle the fuel door is on.

When the indicator nears empty, there is still a little fuel left, but you should get more fuel soon.

Here are four things that some owners ask about. All these things are normal and do not indicate that anything is wrong with the fuel gauge:

- At the fuel station, the pump shuts off before the gauge reads full.
- It takes more, or less, fuel to fill up than the gauge reads. For example, the gauge reads half full, but it took more, or less, than half of the tank's capacity to fill it.
- The gauge pointer may move while cornering, braking or accelerating.
- The gauge may not indicate empty when the ignition is turned off.

⚠ Warning

Before refueling, stop vehicle and switch off the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Safety Belt Reminders

Driver Safety Belt Reminder Light

There is a driver safety belt reminder light on the instrument panel cluster.



When the engine is started, this light flashes for several seconds to remind a driver to fasten the safety belt. The light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue with a chime if the driver remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the driver safety belt is already buckled, neither the light nor the chime comes on.

Passenger Safety Belt Reminder Light



Passenger safety belt reminder light is located above the glove box.

When the engine is started, this light flashes for several seconds to remind passengers to fasten the safety belt. The light stays on solid until the belt is buckled. This cycle may continue with a chime if the passenger remains or becomes unbuckled while the vehicle is moving.

If the passenger safety belt is buckled, neither the chime nor the light comes on.

The front passenger safety belt warning light may turn on if an object is put on the seat such as a briefcase, handbag, grocery bag, laptop, or other electronic device. To turn off the warning light and/or chime, remove the object from the seat or buckle the safety belt.

Airbag Readiness Light

This light shows if there is an electrical problem. The system check includes the airbag sensor(s), the pretensioners (if equipped), the airbag modules, the wiring, and the crash sensing and diagnostic module. *Airbag System* ⇨ *63*.



The airbag readiness light comes on and stays on for several seconds when the vehicle is started. Then the light goes out.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light stays on after the vehicle is started or comes on while driving, it means the airbag system might not be working properly. The airbags in the vehicle might not inflate in a crash, or they could even inflate without a crash. To help avoid injury, have the vehicle serviced right away.

Airbag On-Off Light

If the vehicle has an airbag on-off switch, it also has a passenger airbag status indicator located in the instrument panel, above the glove box.

When the vehicle is started, the passenger airbag status off indicator symbols for on and off will light for several seconds as a system check.



When the front outboard passenger airbag is manually turned off using the airbag on-off switch on the instrument panel endcap, the indicator off symbol will come on and stay on as a reminder that the airbag has been turned off.

This light will go off when the airbag has been turned back on. The belt pretensioners and all the driver airbag systems will remain active.

See Airbag On-Off Switch for more information, including important safety information.

⚠ Warning

If the front outboard passenger frontal airbag is turned off for a person who does not fall under the conditions specified in this

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

manual, that person will not have the extra protection of an airbag. In a crash, the airbag will not be able to inflate and help protect the person sitting there. Do not turn off the front outboard passenger frontal airbag unless the person sitting there falls under the conditions specified in this manual.

⚠ Warning

If the airbag readiness light ever comes on and stays on, it means that something may be wrong with the airbag system. For example, the front outboard passenger frontal airbag could inflate even though the airbag on-off switch is turned off.

To help avoid injury to yourself or others, have the vehicle serviced right away. See Airbag Readiness

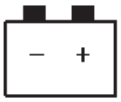
(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

Light for more information, including important safety information.

Charging System Light



The charging system light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned on, but the engine is not running, as a check to show the light is working. The light turns off when the engine is started. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light stays on, or comes on while driving, there could be a problem with the electrical charging system. Have it checked by your dealer. Driving while this light is on could drain the battery.

If a short distance must be driven with the light on, be sure to turn off all accessories, such as the radio and air conditioner.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp

A computer system called OBD II (On-Board Diagnostics-Second Generation) monitors the operation of the vehicle to ensure emissions are at acceptable levels, to produce a cleaner environment. This light comes on when the vehicle is placed in ON/RUN, as a check to show it is working. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. *Ignition Positions (Keyless Access)* ⇨ *185* or *Ignition Positions (Key Access)* ⇨ *187*.



If the malfunction indicator lamp comes on and stays on while the engine is running, this indicates that there is an OBD II problem and service is required.

Malfunctions often are indicated by the system before any problem is apparent. Being aware of the light can prevent more serious damage to the vehicle. This system assists the service technician in correctly diagnosing any malfunction.

The Malfunction Indicator Light (MIL) will also illuminate to indicate that there is a malfunction in the Diesel Particulate Filter (DPF). If this happens, you should consult a repairer to repair the problem immediately.

Caution

If the vehicle is continually driven with this light on, the emission controls might not work as well, the vehicle fuel economy might not be as good, and the engine might not run as smoothly. This

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution (Continued)

could lead to costly repairs that might not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Modifications made to the engine, transmission, exhaust, intake, or fuel system of the vehicle or the replacement of the original tires with other than those of the same Tire Performance Criteria (TPC) can affect the vehicle's emission controls and can cause this light to come on. Modifications to these systems could lead to costly repairs not covered by the vehicle warranty. This could also result in a failure to pass a required Emission Inspection/Maintenance test. *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *227*.

This light comes on during a malfunction in one of two ways:

Light Flashing : A misfire condition has been detected. A misfire increases vehicle emissions and could damage the emission control system on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

To prevent more serious damage to the vehicle:

- Reduce vehicle speed.
- Avoid hard accelerations.
- Avoid steep uphill grades.
- If towing a trailer, reduce the amount of cargo being hauled as soon as it is possible.

If the light continues to flash, stop and park the vehicle. Turn the vehicle off, wait at least 10 seconds, and restart the engine. If the light is still flashing, follow the previous steps and see your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Light On Steady : An emission control system malfunction has been detected on the vehicle. Diagnosis and service might be required.

The following may correct an emission system malfunction:

- Check that the fuel cap is fully installed. *Filling the Tank* ⇨ *215*. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. A loose or missing fuel cap allows fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. A few driving trips with the cap properly installed should turn the light off.
- Check that good quality fuel is used. Poor fuel quality causes the engine not to run as efficiently as designed and may cause stalling after start-up, stalling when the vehicle is changed into gear, misfiring, hesitation on acceleration, or stumbling on acceleration. These conditions might go away once the engine is warmed up.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If one or more of these conditions occurs, change the fuel brand used. It will require at least one full tank of the proper fuel to turn the light off.

Fuel ⇨ 214.

If none of the above have made the light turn off, your dealer can check the vehicle. The dealer has the proper test equipment and diagnostic tools to fix any mechanical or electrical problems that might have developed.

Service Vehicle Soon Light



The service vehicle soon light comes on when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN and goes out after several seconds.

It comes on if a condition exists that may require the vehicle to be taken in for service.

If the light comes on and stays on, take the vehicle to your dealer for service as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Light

The vehicle brake system consists of two hydraulic circuits. If one circuit is not working, the remaining circuit can still work to stop the vehicle. For normal braking performance, both circuits need to be working.

If the warning light comes on, there is a brake problem. Have the brake system inspected right away.



The Brake System Warning Light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

⚠ Warning

The brake system might not be working properly if the brake system warning light is on. Driving with the brake system warning light on can lead to a crash. If the light is still on after the vehicle has been pulled off the road and carefully stopped, have the vehicle towed for service.

If the light comes on while driving, a chime sounds. Pull off the road and stop. The pedal might be harder to push or go closer to the floor. It might also take longer to stop. If the light is still on, have the vehicle towed for service. *Towing the Vehicle ⇨ 284*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electric Parking Brake Light



The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) comes on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

The parking brake status light comes on when the brake is applied. If the light continues flashing after the parking brake is released, or while driving, there is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake system.

If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, see your dealer.



For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), the parking brake warning light should come on briefly when the vehicle is in ON/RUN. If it does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn if there is a problem.

If this light comes on, there is a problem with a system on the vehicle that is causing the parking brake system to work at a reduced level. The vehicle can still be driven, but should be taken to a dealer as soon as possible. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*.



For vehicles with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB), this indicator comes on when the EPB switch is released without pressing the brake pedal. Always press the brake pedal before pressing the EPB switch to release the Electric Parking Brake.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light



The ABS warning light comes on briefly when the ignition key is turned to ON/RUN. This is normal. If the light does not come on then, have it fixed so it will be ready to warn you if there is a problem.

If the light stays on, turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF. If the light comes on while driving, stop as soon as possible and turn the ignition off. Then start the engine again to reset the system. If the light still stays on,

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

or comes on again while driving, the vehicle needs service. If the regular brake system warning light is not on, there are still brakes, but no antilock brakes. If the regular brake system warning light is also on, there are no antilock brakes and there is a problem with the regular brakes. *Brake System Warning Light* ⇨ *106*.

Up-Shift Light



The vehicle may have an up-shift light.

When this light comes on, shift to the next higher gear if weather, road, and traffic conditions allow.

All-Wheel-Drive Light



The All-Wheel-Drive Light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally, the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when there is a malfunction in the All-Wheel-Drive (AWD) system.

This light flashes when the AWD system is temporarily disabled.

All-Wheel Drive ⇨ *200*.

Descent Control System Light



This light functions as the Descent Control System (DCS) active indicator and not ready/warning light.

When the green DCS light comes on steady, the system is ready for use. When the green light comes on blinking, the system is active.

The DCS not ready warning light works in the following manner:

- When the amber light blinks, this indicates that the DCS is not ready to operate.
- When the amber DCS light comes on steady, this indicates that there is a malfunction in the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The blinking and illuminating of the DCS not ready warning light indicates that the brake pads need to cool down. The vehicle should be driven with as little heavy braking as safely possible. The temperature may differ somewhat according to vehicle and driving conditions.

Descent Control System (DCS) ⇨ *205*.

Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light



If this warning light comes on after the vehicle ignition is started or while driving, the speed sensitive power steering may not be working. See your dealer for service.

Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light



If equipped, this light comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the system. See your dealer for service.

Ultrasonic Parking Assist ⇨ *211*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Indicator Light



For vehicles with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this light comes on briefly while starting the engine. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then turns off.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, there could be a problem with the ESC and the vehicle might need service. When this warning light is on, the ESC is off and does not limit wheel spin.

The light flashes if the system is active and is working to assist the driver with directional control of the vehicle in difficult driving conditions.

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *204*.

Electronic Stability Control (ESC) Off Light



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For vehicles with Electronic Stability Control (ESC), this light comes on briefly when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

This light comes on when the ESC system is turned off.

The system can be turned off by pressing the ESC control button located on the center of the instrument panel.

Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control ⇨ *204*.

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light



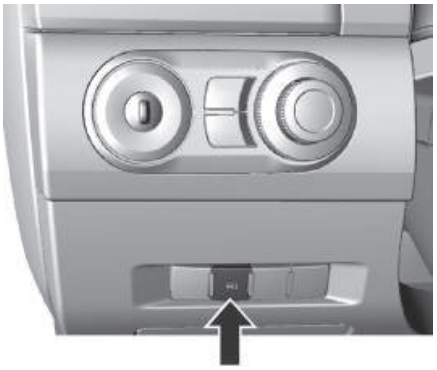
The engine coolant temperature warning light comes on briefly when the engine is started. If the system is working normally the indicator light then goes off.

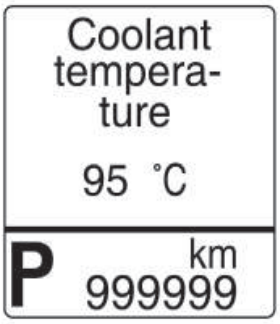
If it does not, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light indicates that the engine coolant has overheated.

If the light comes on and stays on while driving, the vehicle may have a problem with the cooling system. Stop the vehicle and turn off the engine to avoid damage to the engine.

Engine Overheating ⇨ *242*.





If you want to see the engine coolant temperature, press i shortly until the engine coolant temperature is displayed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pre-Heat Light



If your vehicle is diesel engine, preheating indicator light illuminates.

Illuminate when preheating is activated. When the light goes out the engine can be started.

Tire Pressure Light



For vehicles with the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS), this light comes on briefly when the engine is started. It provides information about tire pressures and the TPMS.

When the Light Is On Steady

This indicates that one or more of the tires are significantly underinflated.

Stop as soon as possible, and inflate the tires to the pressure value shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*.

When the Light Flashes First and Then Is On Steady

If the light flashes for about a minute and then stays on, there may be a problem with the TPMS. If the problem is not corrected, the light will come on at every ignition cycle. *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *263*.

Diesel Particulate Filter Light

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.



If the control indicator (DPF lamps) illuminates or flashes, it is necessary to activate the cleaning process of Diesel Particulate Filter by continuing driving safely until DPF lamps off at the cluster. In case, constant driving will be better for cleaning process. *Diesel Particulate Filter* ⇨ *195*.

Case 1: If your DPF light is illuminated, refer to the DIC message:

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Action
required
cleaning
exhaust
filter
Continue
driving

Case 2: If your DPF light is flashed, refer to the DIC message:

Action
required
cleaning
exhaust
filter

Drive
Until
Message
clears

Engine Oil Pressure Light

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low,

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

have the vehicle serviced. Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.



This light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

If the light comes on and stays on, it means that oil is not flowing through the engine properly. The vehicle could be low on oil and might have some other system problem. See your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Low Engine Oil Level Light



This light should come on briefly when the ignition is turned on as a check to let you know that the light is working.

If this light comes on and stays on while the engine is running, it means your engine is low on oil. Check the oil level as soon as possible. *Engine Oil* ⇨ *235*.

Caution

Lack of proper engine oil maintenance can damage the engine. Driving with the engine oil low can also damage the engine. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Check

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

the oil level as soon as possible. Add oil if required, but if the oil level is within the operating range and the oil pressure is still low, have the vehicle serviced.

Always follow the maintenance schedule for changing engine oil.

Change Engine Oil Light



or



This light should come on briefly when the engine is started. If it does not come on have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

When the change engine oil light comes on, it means that service is required on the vehicle.

Engine Oil ⇨ *235* and the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more information.

After the engine oil is changed the engine oil life system needs to be reset in order to turn off this light. *Engine Oil Life System* ⇨ *238*.

Fuel Economy Light



For vehicles with the fuel economy mode light, it comes on when the eco (economy) switch, Located near the climate control module, is

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

pressed. Press the switch again to turn off the light and exit the fuel saver mode.

Low Fuel Warning Light



The low fuel warning light, below the fuel gauge, comes on briefly when the engine is started.

This light also comes on when the fuel tank is low on fuel. When fuel is added, the light should go off. If it does not, have the vehicle serviced.

Water in Fuel Warning Light



It illuminates when the water level in the fuel filter exceeds a certain level.

Immediately drain the water from fuel filter.

To drain the water from fuel filter, you need to consult a workshop to do it. We recommend your authorised repairer.

The warning lamp will go off when the draining is completed.

Security Light



If your vehicle has additional anti-theft system related to Thatcham insurance, the anti-theft off indicator illuminates to indicate that you have disabled the intrusion and inclination senor by pressing the button located on the headliner. If you press the button again, the indicator will go out.

Immobilizer Light



The immobilizer light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer. If the system is working normally the indicator light turns off.

This light comes on when the ignition is turned from LOCK/OFF to ON/RUN and stays on if the vehicle is immobilized. This happens when an incorrect key or an unprogrammed key is used to start the vehicle.

If the light stays on and the engine does not start, there could be a problem with the theft-deterrent system. *Immobilizer Operation (key)* ⇨ *37* or *Immobilizer Operation (keyless)* ⇨ *37*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reduced Engine Power Light



The reduced engine power light should come on briefly as the engine is started. If it does not come on, have the vehicle serviced by your dealer.

This light, along with the malfunction indicator lamp, displays when a noticeable reduction in the vehicle's performance occurs.

The vehicle can be driven at a reduced speed when the reduced engine power light is on but acceleration and speed might be reduced. If this light stays on, see your dealer as soon as possible for diagnosis and repair.

High-Beam On Light



The high-beam on light comes on when the high-beam headlamps are in use.

Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer ⇨ *123*.

Front Fog Lamp Light



For vehicles with front fog lamps, this light comes on when the front fog lamps are in use.

The light goes out when the front fog lamps are turned off. *Front Fog Lamps* ⇨ *125*.

Rear Fog Lamp Light



Illuminated when the rear fog lamps is on.

See Rear Fog Lamps for more information.

Lamps On Reminder



This light comes on when the exterior lamps are in use. *Exterior Lamp Controls* ⇨ *122*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control Light



This light may come on with an white color when the cruise control ON/OFF button is pressed. The light comes on green when the cruise control is set.

The light goes out when the cruise control is turned off. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *207*.

Trailer Indicator Light



Illuminates when the trailer is connected to your vehicle. It will go out when the trailer is disconnected.

Door Ajar Light



This light comes on when a door is open or not securely latched. Before driving, check that all doors are properly closed.

Gate Ajar Light



If the gate ajar light comes on the liftgate is not completely closed. Driving with the liftgate open can cause carbon monoxide (CO) to enter the vehicle.

Engine Exhaust ⇨ *194*.

Vehicle Messages

Messages displayed in the middle of the cluster indicate the status of the vehicle or some action that may be needed to correct a condition. Multiple messages may appear one after another.

Brake System Messages

PRESS BRAKE TO START ENGINE

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if you try to start the engine without having the brake pressed.

Key and Lock Messages

ACCESSORY MODE ACTIVE

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when the accessory mode is active.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if the vehicle does not detect the presence of a transmitter when you have attempted to start the vehicle or a vehicle door has just closed.

ELECTRONIC KEY NOT DETECTED RESTART ALLOWED

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when the keyless access transmitter is not detected inside the vehicle while you are trying to turn the ignition off.

ROTATE CONTROL TO OFF POSITION

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays as a reminder to turn the ignition off.

SERVICE KEYLESS START SYSTEM

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays when there is a problem with this feature.

Transmission Messages

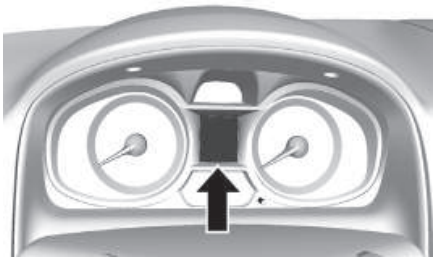
PRESS CLUTCH TO START ENGINE

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if you try to start the engine without having the clutch pressed.

SHIFT TO PARK

If the vehicle has the keyless access system, this message displays if the vehicle is not in P (Park) while the engine is being turned off.

Trip Computer



The vehicle may have a Driver Information Center (DIC). It provides the driver with information such as driving distance for the remaining fuel, average speed and average fuel economy.

The trip information display when the ignition is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

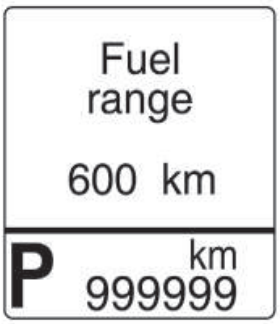
Trip Information





Pressing ↗ will scroll through the trip information.

Driving Distance for Remaining Fuel

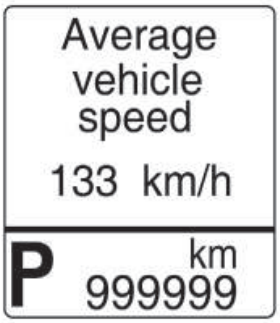


This display shows the approximate number of remaining kilometers the vehicle can be driven without refueling.

When the distance to empty is under about 50 km, you will see dashes on the display.

The fuel range estimate is based on an average of the vehicle's fuel economy over recent driving history and the amount of fuel remaining in the fuel tank. This estimate will change if driving conditions change. For example, if driving in traffic and making frequent stops, this display may read one number, but if the vehicle is driven on a freeway, the number may change even though the same amount of fuel is in the fuel tank. This is because different driving conditions produce different fuel economies. Generally, freeway driving produces better fuel economy than city driving.

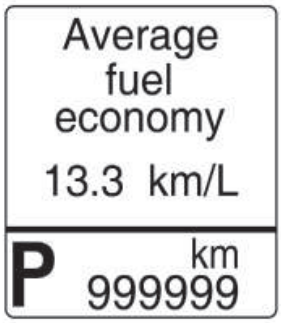
Average Speed



This display shows the average speed. To reset the average speed to zero, press and hold ✓.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Average Fuel Economy



This display shows the approximate average liters per 100 kilometers (L/100 km). This number is calculated based on the number of L/100 km recorded since the last time this menu item was reset. To reset the average fuel economy, press and hold ✓.

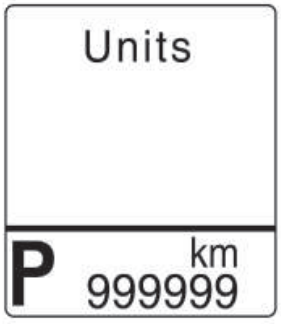
Vehicle Personalization





Vehicles cluster are able to personalize some items by pressing ⊟. The display is shown in the center of the cluster. ⊟ include language, Keyless Locking Change, SBZA, RCTA and Feature Setting Exit.

Units



Press ⊟ when units displays.

Press ✓.

Press ⊟ shortly until the units is displayed.

- Metric : km, km/h, °C, kPa

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- English : mi. MPH, °F, psi

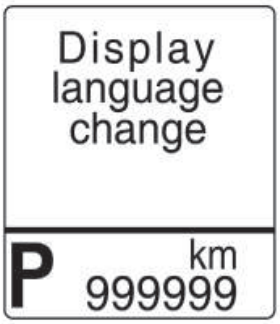
Press ✓.

Fuel efficiency unit settings

Press ⊟ shortly until wanted units (L/100km or km/L)

Press ✓.

Language



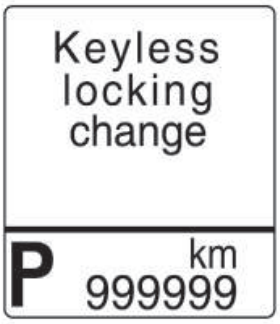
Press ⊟ a few seconds when language displays.

Press ✓.

Press ⊟ shortly until the language is displayed to the desired language.

Press ✓.

Keyless Locking Change



Press ⊟ a few seconds when Keyless Locking Change displays

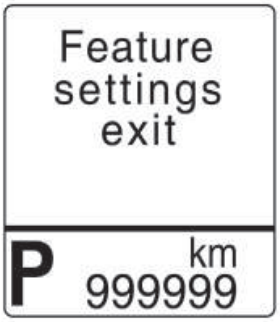
Press ✓.

Each time you press ⊟ shortly the mode changes in the following order:

Off → On → No change → Off…

To select, press ✓ a few seconds.

Feature Settings Exit



Press ✓ a few seconds when Feature Settings Exit displays to return the odometer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) Change



If your vehicle has active on SBZA, Press ⊡ a few seconds when Side Blind Zone Alert Change displays.

Press ✓.

Each time you press ⊡ shortly the mode changes in the following order:

Off → On → No change → Off…

To select, press ✓ a few seconds.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) Change



If your vehicle has active on RCTA, Press ⊡ a few seconds when Rear Cross Traffic Alert Change displays.

Press ✓.

Each time you press ⊡ shortly the mode changes in the following order:

Off → On → No change → Off…

To select, press ✓ a few seconds.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Lighting

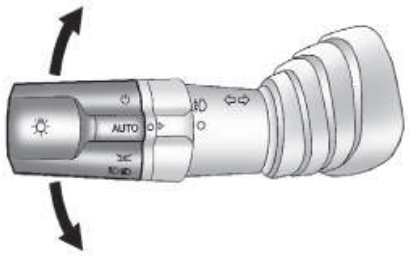
Exterior Lighting
Exterior Lamp Controls 122
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder 123
Headlamp High/Low-Beam Changer 123
Flash-to-Pass 123
Headlamp Range Adjustment 123
Daytime Running Lamps (DRL) 123
Automatic Headlamp System 124
Hazard Warning Flashers 124
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 124
Front Fog Lamps 125
Rear Fog Lamps 125

Interior Lighting
Instrument Panel Illumination Control 126
Dome Lamps 126
Reading Lamps 127

Lighting Features
Battery Power Protection 127

Exterior Lighting

Exterior Lamp Controls



The turn signal lever located on the side of the steering column operates the exterior lamps.

Turn the exterior lamp control at the end of the lever to the following positions:

⏻ **:** Turns all the lamps off.

(Parking Lamps) : Turns on the parking lamps, together with taillamps, license plate lamps, and instrument panel lights.

(Headlamps) : Turns on the headlamps, together with the taillamps, license plate lamps, parking lamps, and instrument panel lights

AUTO : If equipped with automatic headlamps, the lamps turn on or off automatically depending on how dark it is outside.

To turn the automatic lamp control off, turn the exterior lamp control to ⏻. The control automatically returns to its original position when released.

To turn the automatic lamp control on, turn the control to the ⏻ position again.

Do not cover the sensor on top of the instrument panel or the automatic headlamps will not work properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Exterior Lamps Off Reminder

A warning chime sounds, if the driver door is opened while the ignition is off and the exterior lamp control is in the or position.

If the lamps are turned off while the warning is chiming and then turned back on, you will not hear a warning chime.

Headlamp High/ Low-Beam Changer

Push the turn signal lever away from you and release to turn the high beams on. To return to low beams, push the lever again or pull it toward you and release.



This indicator light turns on in the instrument cluster when the high-beam headlamps are on.

Flash-to-Pass

The flash-to-pass feature works with the low beams on or off.

To flash the high beams, pull the turn signal lever all the way toward you, then release it.

Headlamp Range Adjustment



For vehicles with manual headlamp leveling, the manual headlamp range control is next to the steering column. This feature lets the headlamp range be adjusted to suit the vehicle load.

The low-beam headlamps must be on to adjust the headlamp range.

- 0 : Front seat occupied.
- 1 : All seats occupied.
- 2 : All seats occupied and load in the luggage compartment.
- 3 : Driver seat occupied and load in the luggage compartment.

Daytime Running Lamps (DRL)

If DRL is equipped, DRL can make it easier for others to see the front of your vehicle during the daytime.

The DRL system comes on in daylight when the following conditions are met:

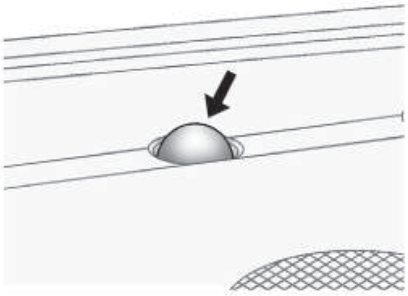
1. The Engine is running.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. The light sensor determines it is daytime.
3. Front Fog Lamp/Low Beam are not activated.

Automatic Headlamp System

On vehicles equipped with an automatic headlamp system, the headlamps come on automatically when it is dark enough outside.



Do not cover the light sensor on top of the instrument panel or the headlamps will come on when they are not needed.

The system may also turn on the headlamps when driving through a parking garage or tunnel.

Hazard Warning Flashers

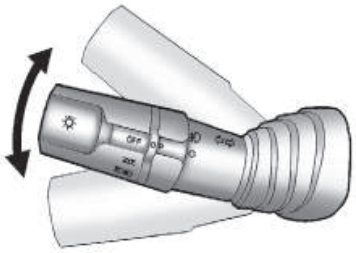


The hazard warning flasher button is on the instrument panel.

⚠ **Hazard Warning Flasher :** Press to make the front and rear turn signal lamps flash on and off. This warns others that you are having trouble. Press the button again to turn the flashers off.

The hazard warning button will be lit, when a door is opened. If the key is removed from the ignition and a door is opened and closed, the hazard warning button will light up for about 10 minutes.

Turn and Lane-Change Signals



An arrow on the instrument cluster flashes in the direction of the turn or lane change.

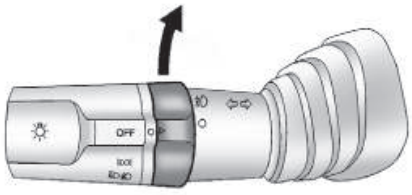
Move the lever all the way up or down to signal a turn.

Raise or lower the lever until the arrow starts to flash to signal a lane change. Hold it there until the lane change is completed. The arrow flashes automatically three times.

The lever returns to its starting position whenever it is released.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Front Fog Lamps



For vehicles with front fog lamps, they are controlled by the band located on the middle of the turn signal/multifunction lever.

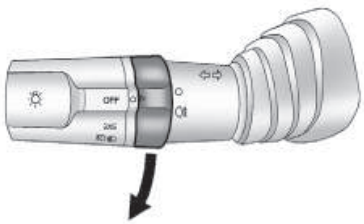
To use the front fog lamps, the low-beam headlamps or parking lamps must be on.

Turn the band to to turn the front fog lamps on. The band automatically returns to its starting position when released. The front fog lamp indicator light comes on in the instrument cluster. *Front Fog Lamp Light* ⇨ *115*.

To turn the front fog lamps off, turn the band to again. The fog lamp indicator light will go off.

For vehicles with automatic headlamps, the parking lamps and low-beam headlamps come on when turning on the front fog lamps.

Rear Fog Lamps



To turn the rear fog lamps on, rotate the ring on the middle of the light switch lever to s when the low beam headlamps are on, or when the parking lamps and the front fog lamps are on. The ring will return automatically to its normal position when released.

The rear fog lamp indicator in the instrument panel illuminates when the fog lamps are turned on.

To turn the fog lamps off, turn the ring to position again. The rear fog lamp indicator will go off.

If your vehicle has the automatic lamp control, parking lamps and low beam headlamps will come on simultaneously when turning on the rear fog lamps.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Interior Lighting

Instrument Panel Illumination Control

This feature controls the brightness of the instrument panel lights.



To dim or brighten the instrument panel lights, press the button and turn it clockwise or counterclockwise.

Dome Lamps



Press the button on the dome lamp to turn it on or off.

The dome lamps come on when a door or the liftgate is opened. The lamps will stay on for about five minutes. If the door or liftgate is closed, the lamps gradually dim after about 10 seconds and then turn off.

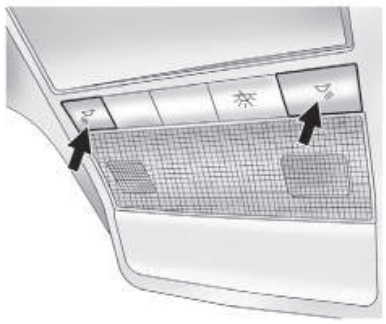
Dome Lamp Override



(Dome Lamp Override) : Press to keep the dome lamps and other interior lamps turned off while any door is open. Press again to return it to the out position and the lamps automatically come on when any door is opened.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Reading Lamps



/ : Press the button near each lamp to turn the reading lamps on or off.

Lighting Features

Battery Power Protection

This feature shuts off the headlamps, parking lamps, fog lamps, etc. if they are left on when the ignition is moved to the LOCK/ OFF position. This helps to prevent the battery from running down.

Battery rundown protection will not work if the lamps are turned on again after this feature operated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Infotainment System

Introduction
Introduction 128
Theft-Deterrent Feature 131
Overview 131
Operation 132

Radio
AM-FM Radio 137
Fixed Mast Antenna 140
Multi-Band Antenna 141

Audio Players
USB Port 141
Auxiliary Devices 147
Bluetooth Audio 148

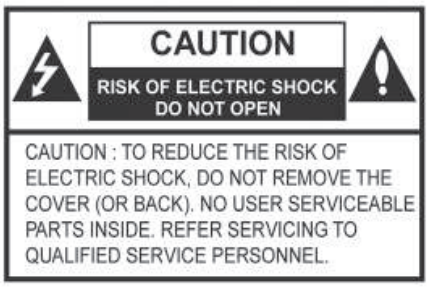
Phone
Bluetooth 151
Hands-Free Phone 154

Settings
Settings 156

Bluetooth Phone/Devices
Pictures and Movies (Pictures) 160
Pictures and Movies (Movies) 162

Introduction

Safety Information

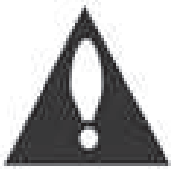




The lightning flash with the arrowhead symbol within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user about the presence of uninsulated dangerous voltage within the product's enclosure that

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

may be of sufficient magnitude to constitute a risk of electric shock to persons.



The exclamation point within an equilateral triangle is intended to alert the user to the presence of important operating and maintenance (servicing) instructions in the literature accompanying the product.

- Always operate the vehicle in a safe manner. Do not become distracted by the vehicle while driving and always be fully aware of all driving conditions. Do not change settings or any functions.

  Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting such operations. To promote safety, certain functions are disabled unless the parking brake is on.
- To reduce the risk of electric shock, do not remove the cover or back of this product. There are no user-serviceable parts inside. Refer servicing to qualified service personnel.
- To reduce the risk of fire or electric shock, do not expose this product to dripping or splashing water, rain, or moisture.
- When driving your vehicle, be sure to keep the volume of the unit low enough to allow you to hear sounds coming from the outside.
- Do not drop it and avoid heavy impacts at anytime.
- The driver should not watch the monitor while driving. If the driver watches the monitor while driving, it may lead to carelessness and cause an accident.

Caution

- Do not disassemble or modify this system. If you do, it may result in accidents, fire, or electrical shock.
- Some states/provinces may have laws limiting the use of video screens while driving. Use the system only where it is legal to do so.
- Do not use your phone in private mode when you are driving. You must stop at a safe location to use it.
- For your safety, some features are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

General Information

The Infotainment system provides Infotainment in your car, using the latest technology.

See your dealer to have the system or software updated and upgraded.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The radio can be easily used by registering up to 25 FM or AM with the PRESET button [1 to 5] per every 5 pages.

The Infotainment system can play the USB storage device or iPod/ iPhone products.

The Bluetooth phone connection function allows for the use of wireless hands-free phone calls, as well as a phone music player.

Connect a portable music player to the auxiliary sound input to enjoy the rich sound of the Infotainment system.

- The "Overview" section provides a simple overview of the Infotainment system's functions and summary of all regulatory devices.
- The "Operation" section explains the basic controls for the Infotainment system.
- Design and specifications are subject to change without notice.
- Some of the radio features may be limited when ignition is off.

Trademarks and Licenses

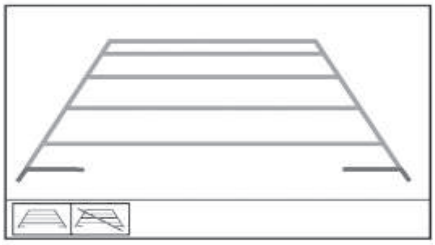
Bluetooth® is a trademark owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc.

Made for iPod" and "Made for iPhone" mean that an electronic accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPod or iPhone respectively, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this accessory with iPod, iPhone may affect wireless performance.

Rear View Camera (Vehicle option)

The Rear View Camera is displayed on the Infotainment system when the gearshift is moved to REVERSE (R) position. Rear View Camera also allows you to check what is behind the vehicle. When the unit is booted completely, the guide line is displayed on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- Touch to hide the guidelines, touch to show the guidelines again.
- The rear view camera helps the driver when driving in reverse direction. Do not use this function for entertainment purposes.
- The objects in the rear view may appear closer or more distant than in reality.

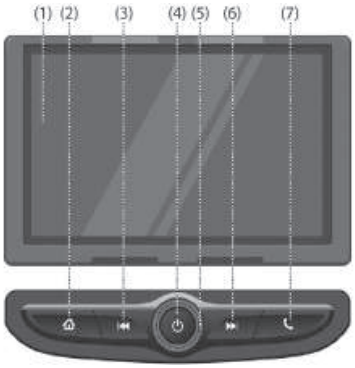
Theft-Deterrent Feature

The Infotainment system has an electronic security system installed to prevent theft.

The Infotainment system only works in the vehicle in which it was first installed, and cannot be used in another vehicle.

Overview

Control panel



(1) Display

Display for Play/Reception/Menu state and information.

(2) HOME ( ) Press to enter the home menu.

(3)/(6) Seek (/)

Press / to seek the station or media contents.

(4) POWER ( )

- Press and hold to turn the power on/off.
- Press to turn the mute function on/off.

(5) Volume knob

Rotate the Volume knob to adjust the volume.

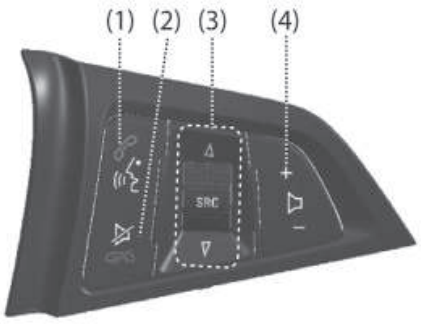
(7) Phone ( )

Press to access the Phone screen.

(If there is no connected phone, the monitor will show the Device Management Menu to allow you to connect a previously paired phone or establish a new Bluetooth enabled phone connection.)

Steering wheel remote control (Only for vehicle equipped with SWC)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



(1) Call ( )

- **When there is no connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system**

  Executes the Bluetooth device connection.

- **When there is a connected Bluetooth device on the Infotainment system**

  Press to answer the call or enter the redial selection mode.

  If the customer's connected phone supports Speech Recognition, press and hold to activate the phone's SR (Speech recognition) mode.

(2) Mute/Hang up ( )

Press in any music play mode to turn the mute function on and off.

Press to reject incoming calls or to finish your current call or phone's SR mode.

(3) SRC

Press **SRC** to change a source.

SEEK (▲ / ▼)

- **Press:**
  - FM/AM mode : receives the previous or next preset station.
  - USB mode : plays the previous or next file.
  - iPod/iPhone mode : plays the previous or next song.
  - Bluetooth music mode : plays the previous or next music.
- **Press and hold:**
  - FM/AM mode : sequentially searches the broadcasting saved in PRESET.
  - Bluetooth, USB, iPod/iPhone mode : quickly scans forward or backward while the button is pressed. Once released, returns to normal playback.

(4) Volume (+ -)

Press **+** to increase the volume.

Press **-** to decrease the volume.

Note

Some vehicle may not have "PTT" in SWC.

Operation

System on/off

- Press on the control panel to turn the power on. The last audio or movie will be executed.
- Press and hold on the control panel to turn the power off. The time and temperature will be shown on the screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Note

The time and temperature are displayed when the ignition switch (car ignition key) is in the ON position.

Turning on/off automatically

When the ignition switch (car ignition key) is in the ACC or ON position, the Infotainment system is turned on automatically.

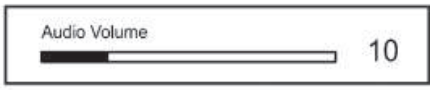
When the ignition switch (car ignition key) is in the OFF position and the user opens the door of the vehicle, the Infotainment system is turned off automatically.

Note

If the user press and hold ⏻ on the control panel when the ignition switch (car ignition key) is in the OFF position, the Infotainment system is turned on. But the Infotainment system is turned off automatically after about 10 minutes.

Volume control

Rotate the Volume knob on the control panel to adjust the volume. The current sound volume is indicated.

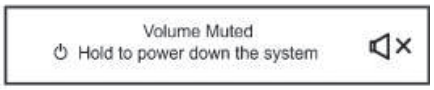


- Using the steering wheel remote control, press + ▷ - to adjust the volume.
- Turning on the Infotainment system power will set the volume level to its previous selection (when it is less than the maximum starting volume).
- If the volume level is louder than maximum starting volume level when the Infotainment system is turned on, the Infotainment system is adjusted automatically to maximum starting volume level.

MUTE

Press ⏻ on the control panel to turn the mute function on and off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Using HOME menu

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel. Home menu may vary depending on the vehicle option.



2. Touch the desired menu.
   - Touch **AUDIO** to select AM/ FM/ USB/ Bluetooth music play or auxiliary sound (AUX) input.
   - Touch **GALLERY** to view picture, movie. (Refer to the "Before using Picture system" or "Before using Movie system" in "GALLERY" section for a list of supported file formats.)
   - Touch **PHONE** to activate phone features (if connected).
   - Touch **SETTINGS** to enter the system setup menu.

Managing Home Page Icons

1. Touch and hold any of the Home Page icons to enter edit mode.
2. Continue holding the icon and drag it to the desired position.
3. Release your finger to drop the icon in the desired position.
4. To move an application to another page, drag the icon to the edge of the screen toward the desired page.
5. Continue dragging and dropping application icons as desired.
6. Press ⌂ to exit edit mode.

Note

- The Edit Mode exits after 30 seconds of inactivity.
- The maximum page of edit mode is 3.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Selecting function

AUDIO

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **AUDIO** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.



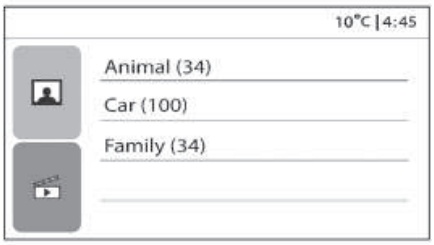
- Touch **AM** to select AM radio.
- Touch **FM** to select FM radio.
- Touch **iPod** to select iPod music.
- Touch **USB1** /**USB2** to select USB1/USB2 music.
- Touch **Bluetooth** to select Bluetooth music.
- Touch **AUX** to select auxiliary sound (AUX) input.

Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.
- If the playback source (iPod/ USB1/ USB2/ AUX/ Bluetooth) is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available.
- Audio source availability may vary depending on region.
- An additional USB device can be supported by attaching an external USB hub from the single USB port.
- We don't recommend to use USB hub with 2 iPhone/iPod devices.

GALLERY

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **GALLERY** on the home menu.



- Touch 🖼 to view picture files contained in the USB storage device.
- Touch 🎬 to view movie files contained in the USB storage device.

Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- If the playback source (USB (picture) / USB (movie)) is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available.

PHONE

To operate Bluetooth hands-free function, connect the Bluetooth phone to the Infotainment system.

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **PHONE** on the home menu. Or press ✆ on the control panel or steering wheel control switch (if available).



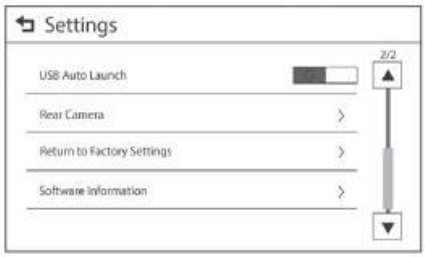
Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.
- If your Bluetooth phone is not connected to the Infotainment system, this function is not available. For details, refer to the “Pairing and connecting Bluetooth” of the “Phone” section.

SETTINGS

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.





Note

- ON setting image is same as follow.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

OFF setting image is same as follow.



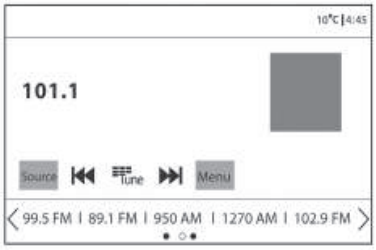
- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.

Radio

AM-FM Radio

Listening to FM/AM radio

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **AUDIO** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.
4. Touch **FM** or AM on the screen. The **FM** or AM radio band of the most recent listened station is displayed.



Note

- Press ⌂ to return to the HOME menu.
- RDS (Radio Data System) function is only available in some countries which support this function.

Searching for broadcasting automatically

Press ⏮ / ⏭ on the control panel to automatically search for available station with good reception.

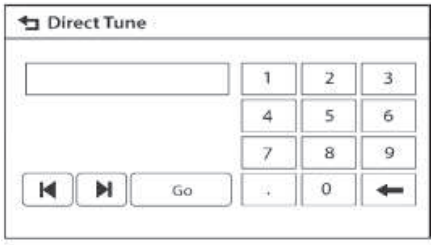
Note

If RDS supported, it will tune broadcasting in the virtual FM memory.

Searching for broadcasting directly

1. Touch Tune on the screen.
2. Touch the desired frequency.
3. Touch **Go**. (This step may not be necessary in Europe/ North America region.)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

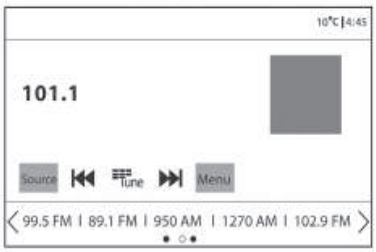


Note
Touching "." between digits is not necessary. The radio will add it automatically at the correct location.

Searching for broadcasting by using the PRESET

Saving PRESET

1. Select the band (FM or AM) you want to store a station into.
2. Select the desired station.
3. Touch < / > to select the desired page of saved favorites.



4. Hold down any of the PRESET to save the current radio station to that button of the selected favorites page.
   - Up to 5 favorites pages can be saved, and each page can store up to five radio stations.

Listening to PRESET directly

1. Repeatedly touch < / > to select the desired page of saved favorites.
2. Touch PRESET to directly listen to the radio station saved to that button.

Using the FM/AM radio menu

General operation of the menu

1. Select the desired band (FM or AM).
2. Touch **Menu** on the FM/AM radio screen.



3. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
4. Touch ↩ to return to the previous menu.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Station List

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **Station List** to display the FM/AM station list.

   The station list information is displayed.

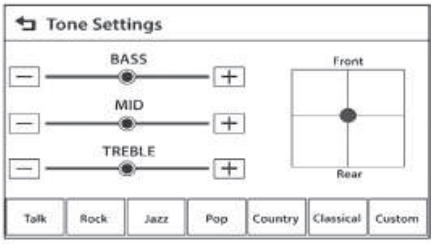


2. Scroll through the list using ▲ / ▼. Tune to the desired station by selecting it.

Tone settings

From Tone Settings menu, sound features can be setup.

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **tone settings** to enter the sound setup mode. The tone settings menu is displayed.



- Touch -/+ to select the desired sound style manually.
- Bass : Adjust the bass level from -12 to +12.
- Mid (Midrange) : Adjust the midrange level from -12 to +12.
- Treble : Adjust the treble level from -12 to +12.
- Fade : Adjust the front/rear speaker balance by dragging the dot in the vehicle interior image.
- Balance : Adjust the left/ right speaker balance by dragging the dot in the vehicle interior image.
- EQ (Equalizer) : Select or turn off the sound style. (Talk, Rock, Jazz, Pop, Country, Classical, Custom)

2. Touch ↩.

Auto Volume

When Auto Volume is turned on, the volume will automatically be controlled according to the vehicle speed to offset the noise from the engine and tires.

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **Auto Volume**.
2. Select the desired option. (Off/ Low/ Medium-Low/ Medium/ Medium-High/ High)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Categories (FM menu)

1. From the FM menu, touch the **Categories** to display the FM category list.

   The FM category list information is displayed.

2. Scroll through the list using ▲ / ▼. Tune to the desired station by selecting it.

Note

The FM category list is only available for RDS (Radio Data System).

Update Station List

1. From the FM/AM menu, touch the **Update Station** List to display the update FM/AM station list. The FM/AM broadcasting list update will proceed.



2. During the FM/AM broadcasting list update, touch **Cancel** to stop it from saving changes.

Traffic Program

The Traffic Program menu is only available for RDS (Radio Data System).

1. From the FM/AM menu, find the Traffic Program by touching ▲ / ▼.
2. Select on or off.

RDS

Setting the RDS function in the FM radio RDS supported.

1. From the FM/AM menu, find the RDS by touching ▲ / ▼.
2. Select on or off.

Region

Setting the jump function by Region broadcasting.

1. From the FM/AM menu, find the Region by touching ▲ / ▼.
2. Select on or off.

Fixed Mast Antenna

To remove the roof antenna, rotate it counterclockwise. To install the roof antenna, rotate it clockwise.

Caution
Be sure to remove the antenna before entering a place with a low ceiling or it may be damaged. Entering the automatic car wash with the antenna installed may result in damage to the antenna or the roof panel. Be sure to remove your antenna before entering the automatic car wash.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Install the antenna fully tightened and adjusted to the upright position to ensure proper reception.

Multi-Band Antenna

The multi-band antenna is on the roof of the vehicle. The antenna is used for the AM-FM radio, if the vehicle has these features. Keep the antenna clear of obstructions for clear reception.

Audio Players

USB Port

The Infotainment system can play the music files contained in the USB storage device, device that support MTP or iPod/iPhone products.

Before using Audio system

Supported audio file formats:

- MP3 (MPEG-1 Layer 3, MPEG-2 Layer 3)

  Constant Bit Rate (CBR) between 8 and 320 kbps

  Variable Bit Rate (VBR) Sampling frequencies of 8, 11.025, 12, 16, 22.05, 24, 32, 44.1, and 48 kHz.
- Windows Media Audio Windows Media Audio 10 CBR between 32 and 768 kbps VBR (Standard), Professional, Lossless, or higher according to Microsoft specifications Sampling frequencies of 8, 12, 16, 22, 32, 44.1, and 48 kHz
- AAC (MPEG-4 AAC, Low Complexity Profile) and AAC+ CBR between 8 and 320 kbps.
- OGG Vorbis
- Waveform (WAV – PCM Windows format)
- Audio Interchange File Format (AIFF)
- 3GPP (Generally used for mobile devices)
- Audio Books (MP3, WMA, AAC, AA)

Cautions for using USB storage device and iPod/iPhone

- Operation cannot be guaranteed if the HDD built-in USB mass storage device or CF or SD memory card is connected by using a USB adaptor. Use a USB or flash memory type storage device.
- Take caution to avoid static electricity discharge when connecting or disconnecting the USB. If connection and disconnection are repeated

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

many times in a short time, this may cause a problem in using the device.

- Operation is not guaranteed if the connecting terminal of the USB device is not metal.
- Connection with i-Stick Type USB storage device may be faulty due to vehicle vibration, so their operation cannot be guaranteed.
- Be careful not to touch the USB connecting terminal with an object or any part of your body.
- The USB storage device can only be recognized when it is formatted in FAT16/32, NTFS, HFS+. exFAT and other file systems cannot be recognized.
- According to the type and capacity of the USB storage device and the type of the stored file, the time it takes to recognize the files may differ. This is not a problem with the product in this case, so please wait for the files to be processed.
- Files in some USB storage device may not be recognized due to compatibility problems.
- Do not disconnect the USB storage device while it is being played. This may cause damage to the product or the performance of the USB device.
- External USB hub may require to use 2 USB devices at the same time based on vehicle variants.
- Disconnect the connected USB storage device when the vehicle ignition is turned off. If the ignition is turned on while the USB storage device is connected, the USB storage device may be damaged or may not operate normally in some cases.
- USB storage device can only be connected to this product for the purpose of playing music/movie, viewing photo files, or upgrading.
- The USB terminal of product should not be used to charge USB accessory equipment since the heat generation using the USB terminal may cause performance issues or damage to the product.
- When the logical drive is separated from a mass USB storage device, only the files from the top-level logical drive can be played for USB music files. This is the reason that the music files to be played should be stored in the top-level drive of the device. Music files in particular USB storage device may also not be normally played if an application is loaded by partitioning a separate drive inside the USB device.
- Music files to which DRM (Digital Right Management) is applied cannot be played.
- This product can support USB storage device that are in capacity with a limit of 5000 files (music, photo and video), and 15 stages of folder structure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Normal usage cannot be guaranteed for storage devices that exceed this limit.

The iPod/iPhone can play all music files supported. But the music file lists are displayed up to 5000 files on the screen in alphabetical order.

- Some iPod/iPhone product models may not support the connectivity or functionality of this product.
- Only connect the iPod/iPhone with connection cables supported by iPod/iPhone products. Other connection cables cannot be used.
- In some rare cases, the iPod/iPhone product may be damaged if the ignition is turned on when it is connected to the product. When the iPod/iPhone product is not being used, keep it separately from this product with the car ignition turned off.
- We don't recommend to use USB hub with 2 iPhone/iPod devices.
- When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the USB port by using the iPod/iPhone cable, the Bluetooth music is not supported.
- Connect the iPod/iPhone to the USB port by using the iPod/iPhone cable to play the music files of iPod/iPhone. When the iPod/iPhone is connected to the AUX input terminal, the music files are played, but not controlled by MyLink.
- iPod/iPhone movie file playback is not supported.
- The playback functions and the information display items of the iPod/iPhone used with this Infotainment system may be different from the iPod/iPhone in terms of play order, method, and the information displayed.
- Refer to the following table for the classification items related to the search function provided by the iPod/iPhone product.

	Step1	Step2
Playlists	Playlists	Songs
Artists	Albums/ All song	Songs
Albums	Albums	Songs
Songs	Songs	
Genres	Albums/ All song	Songs
Composer	Albums/ All song	Songs
Audiobooks	Songs	
PodCasts	PodCast	Episode

USB player

Playing USB storage device music files

Connect the USB storage device containing the music files to the USB port.

- Once the Infotainment system finishes reading the information on the USB storage device, it will be automatically played. (If

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

you set the USB Auto Launch to off in SETTINGS, it will not be automatically played.)

- If a non-readable USB storage device is connected, then an error message will appear and the Infotainment system will be automatically switched to the previous audio function.



Note
If the USB storage device is already connected, press ⌂ > **AUDIO** > **Source** > **USB** to play the USB music files.

Ending the USB music files playback

1. Touch **Source**.
2. Select other function by touching the **AM**, **FM**, **AUX** or **Bluetooth**.

Note
If the user wants to remove the USB storage device, Select other function, and then remove the USB storage device.

Pause

Touch ⏸ during playback.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the next file

Touch ⏭ to play the next file.

Playing the previous file

Touch ⏮ within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous file.

Returning to the beginning of the current file

Touch ⏮ after 5 seconds of playback time.

Scanning forward or backward

Hold down ⏮ / ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release ⏮ / ⏭ to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing file randomly

Touch ⤮ during playback.

- ⤮ : Plays all files randomly.
- ⤮ : Returns to normal playback.

General operation of the USB music menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the USB music screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ⮌ to return to the previous menu.

Browse Music

1. From the USB music menu, touch **Browse Music**.

   The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/ Artists/ Albums/ Songs/ Genres/ More.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone settings

From the USB menu, sound features can be setup. For details, refer to the "Tone settings (FM/AM menu)" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the "Auto Volume" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Traffic Program

For details, refer to the "Traffic Program" of the "AM-FM Radio section".

MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) player

Playing music from a supported MTP device

Connect the supported MTP device containing music files to the USB port.

- Once the Infotainment system finishes reading the information on the device that supports MTP (Media Transfer Protocol), it will be automatically played. (If you set the USB Auto Launch to off in SETTINGS, it will not be automatically played.)
- If a non-readable device that supports MTP (Media Transfer Protocol) is connected, then an error message will appear and the Infotainment system will be automatically switched to the previous audio function.



Note

- Depending on the connected device, some files may not be played.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- File loading may take a few minutes depending on the type of the phone or the number of file/folder stored in the phone.
- When you connect the MTP device, the Infotainment system scans audio files first, and then scans picture and movie files. While scanning picture or movie files, these files may not be available until loading indicator on the audio screen disappears even if the audio file in MTP device is playing.
- If you connect the MTP device that has external memory, it may be recognized as USB1/USB2.
- Other operation is same as USB player. For detail, refer to the “USB player” of the “USB port” section.
- To operate MTP connection the user may be required to change the USB connection setting to MTP on the device.

iPod/iPhone player

Limited to models supporting the iPod/iPhone connection

Playing music files of iPod/iPhone

Connect the iPod/iPhone containing the music files to the USB port.

- Once the Infotainment system finishes reading the information on the iPod/iPhone, it will be automatically played from the previously played point. (If you set the USB Auto Launch to off in SETTINGS, it will not be automatically played.)



Note

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected,

If the iPod/iPhone is already connected, press ⌂ > **AUDIO** > **Source** > **iPod** to play the iPod/iPhone.

Ending the iPod/iPhone playback

1. Touch **Source**.
2. Select other function by touching the **AM**, **FM**, **AUX** or **Bluetooth**.

Note

If the user wants to remove the iPod/iPhone, Select other function, and then remove the iPod/iPhone.

Pause

Touch ❚❚ during playback.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the next song

Touch ⏭ to play the next song.

Playing the previous song

Touch ⏮ within 2 seconds of playback time to play the previous song.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Returning to the beginning of the current song

Touch ⏮ after 2 seconds of playback time.

Scanning forward or backward

Hold down ⏮ / ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release ⏮ / ⏭ to resume playback at normal speed.

Playing file randomly

Touch 🔀 during playback.

- 🔀 : Plays all files randomly.
- 🔀 : Returns to normal playback.

General operation of the iPod music menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the iPod music screen.



2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ↩ to return to the previous menu.

Browse Music

1. From the **iPod** music menu, touch Browse Music.

   The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/ Artists/ Albums/ Songs/ Genres/ More.
2. Touch the desired music.

Tone settings

From the iPod menu, sound features can be setup. For details, refer to the "Tone settings (FM/AM menu)" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the "Auto Volume" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Auxiliary Devices

The Infotainment system can play auxiliary music connected by the auxiliary device.

Playing music source of auxiliary device

Connect the auxiliary device containing music source to the AUX input terminal. Once the Infotainment system finishes reading the information on the auxiliary device, it will be automatically played. (If you set the

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

USB Auto Launch to off in SETTINGS, it will not be automatically played.)



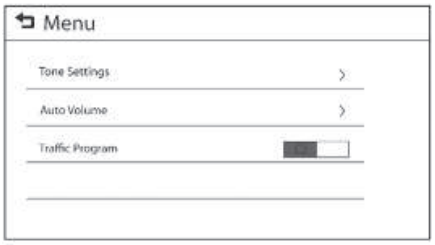
Note

- the auxiliary device is already connected, press ⌂ > **AUDIO** > **Source** > **AUX** to play music source of auxiliary device
- The type of AUX cable (3.5 mm)
  - 3-pole cable : AUX cable for audio



General operation of the AUX music menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the AUX music screen.



2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ⮌ to return to the previous menu.

Tone settings

From the AUX menu, sound features can be setup. For details, refer to the "Tone settings (FM/AM menu)" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the "Auto Volume" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Traffic Program

For details, refer to the "Traffic Program" of the "AM-FM Radio section".

Bluetooth Audio

If equipped, music may be played from a paired Bluetooth device. Refer to the "Phone" section for help pairing a device.

Before playing Bluetooth music

- The supported profile: A2DP, AVRCP

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Bluetooth music may not be supported depending on a mobile phone or Bluetooth device.
- From the mobile phone or Bluetooth device, find the Bluetooth device type to set/ connect the item as a stereo headset.
- A musical note icon (♪) will appear on the screen if the stereo headset is successfully connected.
- The sound played by the Bluetooth device is delivered through the Infotainment system.
- Bluetooth music can be played only when a Bluetooth device has been connected. To play Bluetooth music, connect the Bluetooth phone to the Infotainment system.
- If the Bluetooth is disconnected while playing phone music, the music is discontinued. The audio streaming function may not be supported in some Bluetooth phones. Only one function can be used at a time between the Bluetooth hands-free or Phone music function. For example, if you convert to the Bluetooth hands-free while playing Phone music, the music is discontinued.
- For Bluetooth music to play, the music must at least be played once from the music player mode of the mobile phone or Bluetooth device after connecting as a stereo headset. After being played at least once, the music player will be automatically played upon entering play mode, and it will be automatically stopped when the music player mode ends. If the mobile phone or Bluetooth device is not in the waiting screen mode, some devices may not automatically play in Bluetooth music play mode.

Playing Bluetooth music

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **AUDIO** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Source** on the screen.
4. Touch **Bluetooth** to select the connected Bluetooth music play mode.



Note

If the Bluetooth device is not connected, then this function cannot be selected.

Pause

Touch ❚❚ during playback. Touch ▶ again to resume playback.

Playing the next music

Touch ⏭ to play the next music.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Playing the previous music

Touch ⏮ within 2 seconds of playback time to play the previous music.

Returning to the beginning of the current music

Touch ⏮ after 2 seconds of playback time.

Search

Hold down ⏮ or ⏭ to fast forward or rewind.

Playing music randomly

Touch 🔀 during playback.

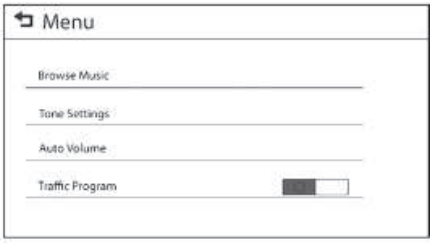
- 🔀 : Plays all files randomly.
- 🔀 : Returns to normal playback.

Note

Some function may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

General operation of the Bluetooth music menu

1. Touch **Menu** on the Bluetooth music screen.



2. Touch the desired menu to select the relevant item or to display the item's detailed menu.
3. Touch ↩ to return to the previous menu.

Browse Music

1. From the Bluetooth music menu, touch **Browse Music**. The number of relevant songs is displayed by all Playlists/ Artists/ Albums/ Songs/ Genres/ More. The items may vary depending on the mobile phone.
2. Touch the desired music.

Note

This function may not be supported depending on the mobile phone.

Tone settings

From the Bluetooth music menu, sound features can be setup. For details, refer to the "Tone settings (FM/AM menu)" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Auto Volume

Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the "Auto Volume" of the "AM-FM Radio" section.

Traffic Program

For details, refer to the "Traffic Program" of the "AM-FM Radio section".

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution on playing Bluetooth music:

- Do not change the track too quickly when playing Bluetooth music.
- It takes some time to transmit data from the mobile phone to the Infotainment system. The Infotainment system outputs the audio from the mobile phone or Bluetooth device as it is transmitted.
- If the mobile phone or Bluetooth device is not in the idle screen mode, it may not automatically play despite being carried out from the Bluetooth music play mode.
- The Infotainment system transmits the order to play from the mobile phone in the Bluetooth music play mode. If this is done in a different mode, then the device transmits the order to stop. Depending on the mobile phone's options, this order to play/stop may some take time to activate.
- If Bluetooth music playback is not functioning, then check to see if the mobile phone is in the idle screen mode.
- Sometimes, sounds may be cut off during the Bluetooth music playback.

Phone

Bluetooth

Understanding Bluetooth wireless technology

Bluetooth wireless technology establishes a wireless link between two devices supported with Bluetooth.

After the initial pairing, the two devices can connect automatically each time you turn them on. Bluetooth allows wireless transmission of information among Bluetooth phones, PDAs, or other devices within close ranges by using 2.45 GHz frequency short-distance wireless telecommunication technologies. Within this vehicle, users can make hands-free calls, transmit hands-free data, and play audio streaming files by connecting a mobile phone with the system.

Note

- There may be restrictions on using Bluetooth wireless technology in some locations.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Due to the variety of Bluetooth devices and their firmware versions, your device may respond differently when performing over Bluetooth.
- Any inquiries regarding your phone's Bluetooth functionality, refer to the device manual.
- Multi-pairing is not supported.

Pairing and connecting Bluetooth

To use the Bluetooth feature, make sure the Bluetooth on your device is turned on and your device should be discoverable mode. Refer to user guide of Bluetooth device.

When there is no paired device on the Infotainment system

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **PHONE** on the home menu.

   Or touch on the control panel.

   Or touch on the steering wheel remote control (only when there is no OnStar).
3. Touch **Search Device** to search for Bluetooth phones.
4. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

   If the SSP (Secure Simple Pairing) is supported, touch **Yes** or **Pair** on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and Infotainment system.

   If the SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.
5. When your Bluetooth device and Infotainment system is successfully paired, the "PHONE" screen is displayed on the Infotainment system.



When the connection fails, failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.

When there is a paired device on the Infotainment system

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Touch the device you wish to pair from the “Device Management” screen, and then

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

follow the step 6. To add a device not in the list touch **Search Device**.

5. Touch the desired device to pair on the searched list screen.

   If the SSP is supported, touch **Yes** or **Pair** on the pop-up screen of the your Bluetooth device and Infotainment system.

   If the SSP is not supported, input the PIN code on your Bluetooth device as shown on the screen.

6. When your Bluetooth device and the Infotainment system is successfully paired, the / is displayed on the "Device Management" screen.
   - The connected phone is highlighted by mark.
   - The / mark indicates the hands-free and phone music function are enabled.
   - The mark indicates only hands-free function is enabled.
   - The mark indicates only Bluetooth music is enabled.

Note

- When your Bluetooth device and Infotainment system is successfully paired, the Phone book is downloaded automatically. But the Phone book may not be downloaded automatically according to the type of the phone. In this case, proceed with the Phone book download on your phone. We recommend that you “Always” accept the Phone book request on the initial pairing of the phone.
- The Infotainment system can register up to ten Bluetooth devices.
- When the connection fails, the failure message is displayed on the Infotainment system.
- If the Phone book lists are more than 5000, the Infotainment system does not guarantee proper listing of remaining Phone book entries.
- Depending on the Phone book entries, paring time may be different.

Checking the connected Bluetooth device

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Connected device will be shown.

Disconnecting the Bluetooth Device

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Touch the name of the device you wish to disconnect.
5. Touch **Disconnect**.

Connecting the Bluetooth Device

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Touch the device you wish to pair.

Deleting the Bluetooth Device

If you no longer need to use the Bluetooth device, you can delete it.

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** on the home menu.
3. Touch **Bluetooth** > **Device Management**.
4. Touch
5. Touch Delete.

Hands-Free Phone

Making a call by entering phone number

1. Enter the phone number using the keypad on the "PHONE" screen.



2. Touch on the screen or press on the steering wheel remote control. Or press on the control panel.

Note

If you touch the wrong number, touch to delete the inputted number one digit at a time or touch and hold to delete all the inputted numbers.

Switching call to the mobile phone (Private Mode)

1. If you want to switch the call to the mobile phone instead of the car hands-free, touch .
2. If you want to switch the call back to the hands-free, touch again. The call is switched to the car hands-free.

Switching the microphone on/off

You can switch the microphone on/off by touching .

Calling by Re-dial

From the steering wheel remote control, press or touch on the "PHONE" screen.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note
Redialing is not possible when there is no call history.

Taking calls

1. When a phone call comes through the connected Bluetooth mobile phone, the playing track will be cut off and the phone will ring with the relevant information displayed.
2. To talk on the phone, press on the steering wheel remote control or touch on the screen.

   To reject the call, press the on the steering wheel remote control or touch on the screen.

Using the Contacts menu

1. Touch **Contacts** on the "PHONE" screen.
2. Use ▲ / ▼ to scroll through the list.
3. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.
4. If the contacts have 2 or more phone number, touch a number to call.

Searching for Contacts entries

1. Touch **Contacts** on the "PHONE" screen.
2. Touch on the "Contacts" screen.
3. Use the keypad to input the name you want to search.

   For details, refer to the “Searching for the name” of the “PHONE” section.
4. Select the Phone book entry you want to call.

Searching for the name

Ex) when the user searches for a name, such as “alex”

1. Touch **abc** to select the first character.

   The names included “a”, “b”, or “c” characters are displayed on the “Contacts” screen.
2. Touch **jkl** to select the second character.

   The names included “j”, “k”, or “l” characters are displayed on the “Contacts” screen.
3. Touch **def** to select the third character.

   The names included “d”, “e”, or “f” characters are displayed on the “Contacts” screen.
4. Touch **wxyz** to select the fourth character.

   The names included “w”, “x”, “y”, or “z” characters are displayed on the “Contacts” screen.
5. As more letters of the name are entered, the list of possible names is shortened.

Making a call from Call history

1. Touch **Call History** on the "PHONE" screen.
2. Touch , , or .
   - : All call history
   - : Dialed call
   - : Missed call

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- : Received call

3. Select the contact you want to call.

Making a call with speed dial numbers

Touch and hold speed dial number using the keypad on the "PHONE" screen.

Only speed dial numbers already stored on the mobile phone can be used for speed dial calls. Up to 2-digit speed dial numbers are supported.

For 2-digit speed dial numbers, touch and hold the 2nd digit to make a call to the speed dial number.

Voice Mail

The default voice mail number is the phone number of the currently connected phone. The voice mail number can be changed in Bluetooth settings.

To dial a voice mail number:

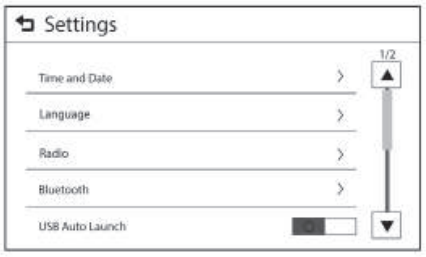
1. Press the Phone screen button.
2. Select Voice Mail.
3. Select Call.

Settings

General operation of the settings menu

The Infotainment system can be customized to make it easier for you to use.

1. Press on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS**.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



3. Select the desired setting value.

Note
Settings menus and functions may vary depending on your vehicle option.

Time and Date

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Time and Date**.



- [Set Time Format] : Select 12h or 24h time display.
- [Set Date Format] : Set the date display format.
  - [DD/MM/YYYY]
  - [MM/DD/YYYY]
  - [YYYY/MM/DD]
- [Auto Set] : Select Off-Manual, On-RDS, On-GPS or On-CelNetwork for time set. (This varies different depending on the region.)
- [Set Time] : Set the time by touching +/-.
- [Set Date] : Set the date by touching +/-.

Note
- Depending on the region, [Auto Set] menu may not be supported.
- [Set Time] and [Set Date] are only available when you set the [Auto Set] to [Off-Manual].

Language

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Language**.

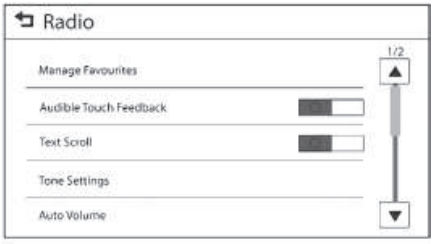


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Select language displayed on the Infotainment system.

Radio

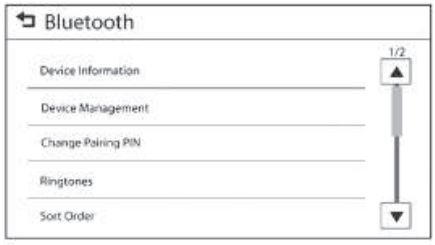
1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Radio**.



- [Manage Favorites] : Select the number of favorite list on the radio screen.
- [Audible Touch Feedback] : Allow audible feedback when touching the radio screen.
- [Text Scroll] : Allow scrolling of text such as radio station identification, messages, or music information.
- [Tone Settings] : Set the sound feature. For details, refer to the “Tone settings (FM/AM menu)” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
- [Auto Volume] : Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
- [Maximum Startup Volume] : Set the max startup volume. (13 to 37)

Bluetooth

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Bluetooth**.



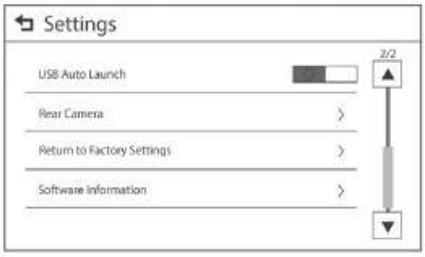
- [Device Information] : Check the device information.
- [Device management] : Select the desired device and connect/ disconnect or delete.
- [Change Pairing PIN] : Manually change/set the PIN code.
- [Ringtones] : Change the ringtone.
- [Sort Order] : Change the sorting order of contacts. (First/Last or Last/First)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- [Voice Mail Numbers] : Change the voice mail number.

USB Auto Launch

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** and find [USB Auto Launch].
3. Select on or off.

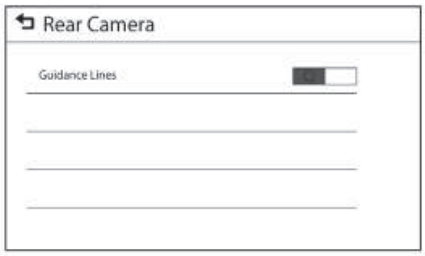


- [On] : If you connect the device through USB port, it will be launched automatically.
- [Off] : If you connect the device through USB port, it will not be launched automatically.

Rear Camera

The [Rear Camera] menu is only available which has RVC option.

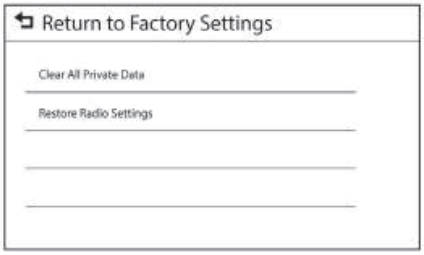
1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Rear Camera**.



- [Guidance Lines] : Select the Guidance Lines feature to turn on or off.

Return to Factory Settings

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Return to Factory Settings**.

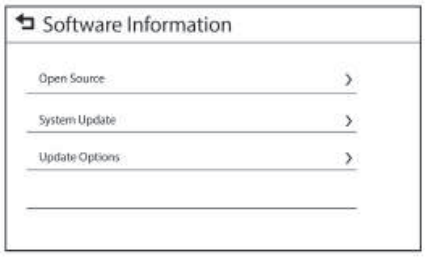


- [Clear All Private Data] : Clear all private data from the system.
- [Restore Radio Settings] : Restore all radio settings.

Software Information

1. Press ⌂ on the control panel.
2. Touch **SETTINGS** > **Software Information**.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



- [Open Source] : Display Open Source Software licensing information.
- [System Update] : Update the system.
- [Update Options] : Set the update option.

Bluetooth Phone/ Devices

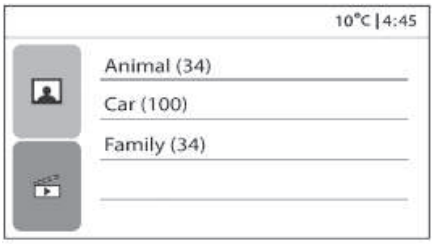
Pictures and Movies (Pictures)

Note

Picture and movie function is not supported for iPhone.

Gallery (Pictures)

The Infotainment system can view picture files contained in the USB storage device.



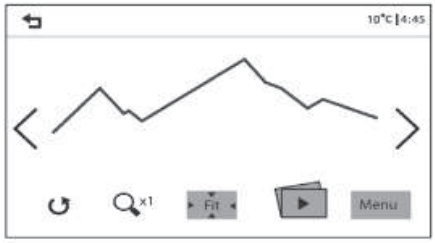
Caution on using picture files

- Only the following file extensions are supported: '*.jpg', '*.bmp', '*.png', '*.gif' (Animated GIF is not supported.)
- Some files may not operate due to a different format or the condition of file.

Viewing a picture

1. Connect the USB storage device containing the picture files to the USB port.

   The picture will be displayed.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2. Touch the screen to hide control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch ⮌ to return to the previous screen.

Note

- If the USB storage device is already connected, press ⌂ > **GALLERY** > to view the picture files.
- For your safety, some features are disabled while your vehicle is in motion.

Viewing slide show

From the picture screen, touch ▶.

- The slideshow will be played.
- Touch the screen to cancel the slide show during slide show playback.

Viewing a previous or next picture

From the picture screen, touch < or > to view previous or next picture.

Rotating a picture

From the picture screen, touch ↺ to rotate the picture.

Enlarging a picture

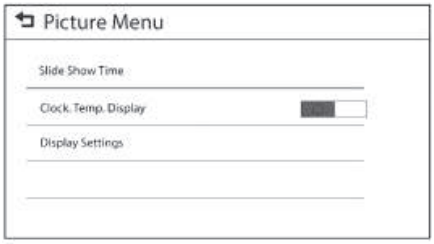
From the picture screen, touch 🔍x1 to enlarge the picture.

Viewing to full screen

From the picture screen, touch **Fit** to view to full screen. Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.

Using the USB picture menu

1. From the picture screen, touch **MENU**. The USB picture menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.
   - [slide show time] : Select the slide show interval.
   - [clock/temp display] : To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.
   - [display settings] : Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.
3. After the setting is complete, touch ⮌.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Pictures and Movies (Movies)

Gallery (Movies)

The Infotainment system can play movie files contained in the USB storage device.

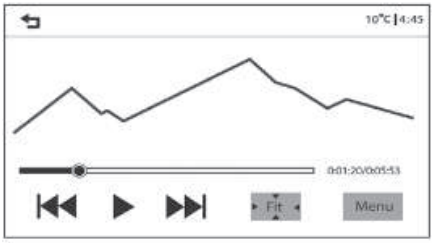
Before using Movie system

The following movie file formats are supported:

- Available resolution : Up to 1280 x 720 pixels. (1280 x 720 is supported)
- Frame rate : less than 30 fps.
- Playable movie file : ".mp4", ".avi" The playable movie file may not be played according to the codec format.
- Playable Codec format : H.264/ MPEG-4 AVC
- Playable Audio format : "MP3", "AC3", "AAC", "WMA"
- Max Audio Bitrate:
  - MP3 : 320 kbps
  - WMA : 768 kbps
  - AC3 : 640 kbps
  - AAC : 320 kbps
- Movie files to which DRM (Digital Right Management) is applied may not be played.

Playing a movie file

1. Connect the USB storage device containing the movie files to the USB port.
2. Press ⌂ > **GALLERY** > 🎬 and select the desired movie file. The movie will be played.



3. Touch the screen to hide control bar. Touch the screen again to show the control bar again, touch ↩ to return to the previous screen.

Note

Movie is available at some countries.

Pause

Touch ⏸ during playback.

Touch ▶ to resume playback.

Playing the next movie

Touch ⏭ to play the next movie.

Playing the previous movie

Touch ⏮ within 5 seconds of playback time to play the previous movie.

Returning to the beginning of the current movie

Touch ⏮ after 5 seconds of playback time.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Scanning forward or backward

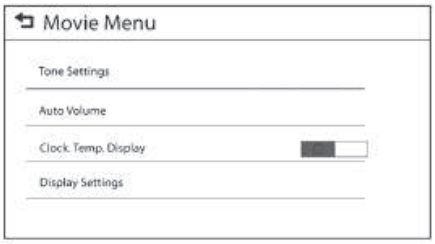
Hold down ⏮ / ⏭ during playback to rewind or fast-forward. Release ⏮ / ⏭ to resume playback at normal speed.

Viewing to full screen

From the movie screen, touch **Fit** to view to full screen. Touch **Fit** again to return to the previous screen.

Using the USB movie menu

1. From the movie screen, touch **MENU**. The USB movie menu is displayed.



2. Touch the desired menu.
   - [tone settings] : Set the sound feature. For details, refer to the “Tone settings (FM/AM menu)” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
   - [Auto Volume] : Volume will be automatically controlled. For details, refer to the “Auto Volume” of the “AM-FM Radio” section.
   - [clock/temp display] : To display the clock and temperature on the full screen, select On or Off.
   - [display settings] : Adjust the Brightness and Contrast.
3. After the setting is complete, touch ⮌.

Android Auto, Apple CarPlay

If equipped, Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™ capability may be available through a compatible smartphone. If available, a PROJECTION ICON will appear on the Home Page of the infotainment display.

To use Android Auto™ and/or Apple CarPlay™:

1. Download the Android Auto app to your phone from the Google Play store. There is no app required for Apple CarPlay.
2. Connect your Android Phone or Apple iPhone by using the compatible phone USB cable and plugging into a USB data port. For best performance, use your device’s factory-provided USB cable. Aftermarket or third-party cables may not work.

The PROJECTION ICON on the HOME page will change to Android Auto™ or Apple CarPlay™ depending on the phone. Android Auto and/or Apple CarPlay may automatically launch upon USB connection. If not, press the ANDROID AUTO and/or APPLE CARPLAY icon on the HOME page to launch.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

For further information on how to set up Android AutoTM and Apple CarPlayTM in the vehicle, see [division owner site here] or call [Divisional Infotainment Call Number].

Android Auto is provided by Google and is subject to Google's terms and privacy policy. CarPlay is provided by Apple and is subject to Apple's terms and privacy policy. For Android Auto support see https://support.google.com/androidauto or Apple CarPlay support at https://www.apple.com/legal/sla/ for more information. Apple or Google may change or suspend availability at any time. Android AutoTM is a trademark of Google Inc., Apple CarPlayTM is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Climate Controls

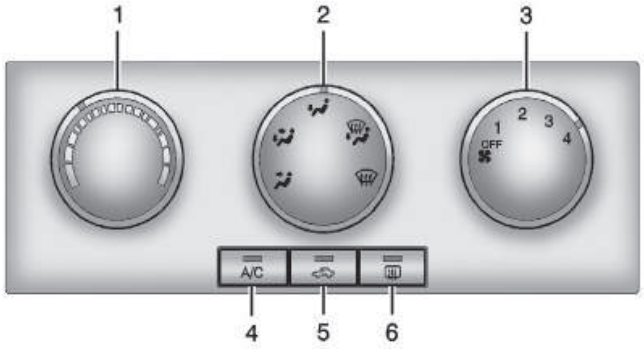
Climate Control Systems
Climate Control Systems 165
Dual Automatic Climate Control System 167
Rear Climate Control System 170

Air Vents
Air Vents 171

Maintenance
Passenger Compartment Air Filter 172

Climate Control Systems

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



1. Temperature Control
2. Air Delivery Mode Control
3. Fan Control
4. Air Conditioning (A/C)
5. Recirculation
6. Rear Window Defogger

OFF : Turns the fan off.

Temperature Control : Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature of the air flowing from the system.

(Fan Control) : Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan must be turned on to run the air conditioning compressor.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Air Delivery Mode Control : Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to change the current airflow mode.

Select from the following air delivery modes:

(Vent) : Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level) : Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets.

(Floor) : Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air directed to the rear outlets. Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow the flow of air to the rear compartment.

(Defog) : Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield and floor outlets.

(Defrost) : Clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

A/C (Air Conditioning) : Turn to the desired speed. The air conditioning does not operate when the fan control knob is in the off position. Press A/C to turn the air conditioning on and off. When A/C is pressed, an indicator light comes on to show that the air conditioning is on.

For quick cool down on hot days, do the following:

1. Open the windows briefly to let hot air escape.
2. Press .
3. Press A/C.
4. Select the coolest temperature.
5. Select the highest speed.

Using these settings together for long periods of time may cause the air inside the vehicle to become too dry. To prevent this from happening, after the air in the vehicle has cooled, turn the recirculation mode off.

The air conditioning system removes moisture from the air, so a small amount of water might drip under the vehicle while idling or after turning off the engine. This is normal.

(Recirculation) : Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on to show that the recirculation is on. Press the button again to return to outside air mode. Air is recirculated inside the vehicle. It helps to quickly cool the air inside the vehicle or help to reduce outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

Using the recirculation mode for extended periods may cause the windows to fog. If this happens, select the defrost mode.

Rear Window and Outside Mirror Defogger

If equipped with a rear window and outside mirror defogger, they only work when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

(Rear Window Defogger) : Press to turn the rear window and outside mirror defogger on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the feature is on.

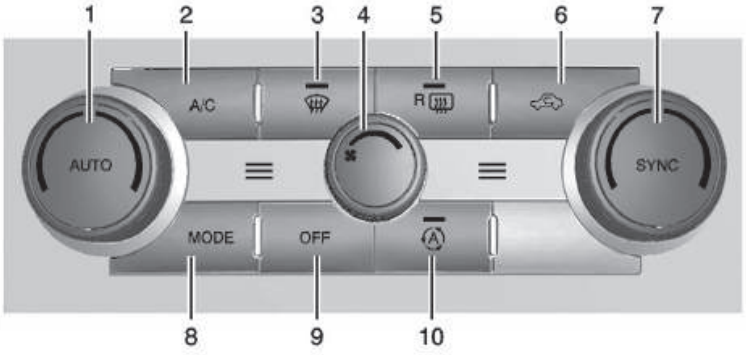
The rear window defogger turns off automatically within 15 minutes. It can also be turned off by pressing again.

Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object on the inside rear window can damage the antenna or defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not stick anything to the rear window.

Dual Automatic Climate Control System

The heating, cooling, and ventilation for the vehicle can be controlled with this system.



1. AUTO (Automatic Operation)
2. A/C (Air Conditioning)
3. Defrost
4. Fan Control
5. Rear Window Defogger
6. Recirculation
7. SYNC (Synchronized Temperatures)
8. MODE (Air Delivery Mode Control)
9. OFF
10. AQS (Air Quality Sensor)

Automatic Operation

The system automatically controls the fan speed, air delivery, air conditioning, and recirculation in order to heat or cool the vehicle to the desired temperature.

When the AUTO indicator appears in the display, the system is in full automatic operation. If the air

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

delivery mode or fan setting is manually adjusted, the AUTO indicator turns off and the Driver Information Center (DIC) display will show the selected settings.

To place the system in automatic mode:

1. Press AUTO.
2. Set the temperature. Allow the system time to stabilize. Then adjust the temperature, as needed for best comfort.

OFF : Turns the system off.

Temperature Control : Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the temperature of the air flowing from the system.

SYNC (Synchronized Temperatures) : The temperature can be adjusted separately for the driver and the passenger. Adjust the SYNC knob to increase or decrease the passenger temperature.

Press the SYNC knob to change the dual zone and single zone display on the DIC. Press the SYNC button during the dual zone mode to link all climate settings to the driver setting.

(Fan Control) : Turn clockwise or counterclockwise to increase or decrease the fan speed. The fan must be turned on to run the air conditioning compressor. AUTO mode is cancelled when the fan control knob is turned. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

MODE (Air Delivery Mode Control) : Press to change the direction of the airflow. Changing the air delivery mode while in AUTO cancels the automatic operation and the system goes into manual mode. Press AUTO to return to automatic operation.

Select from the following:

(Vent) : Air is directed to the instrument panel outlets.

(Bi-Level) : Air is divided between the instrument panel and floor outlets.

(Floor) : Air is directed to the floor outlets, with some air directed to the rear outlets. Keep the area under the front seats clear to allow the flow of air to the rear compartment.

(Defog) : Clears the windows of fog or moisture. Air is directed to the windshield and floor outlets.

(Defrost) : Clears the windshield of fog or frost more quickly. Air is directed to the windshield.

Do not drive the vehicle until all the windows are clear.

A/C (Air Conditioning) : Press A/C to turn the air conditioning on and off. When A/C is pressed, a indicator light appears in the DIC to show that the air conditioning is on. AUTO mode is cancelled when A/C is pressed.

(Recirculation) : Press to turn on recirculation. An indicator light comes on to show that the recirculation is on. Press the button again to return to outside air mode. Air is recirculated inside the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

It helps to quickly cool the air inside or help to reduce outside air and odors from entering the vehicle.

Using the recirculation mode for extended periods may cause the windows to fog. If this happens, select the defrost mode.

AQS (Air Quality Sensor) : Press to turn AQS on or off. An indicator comes on to show that AQS is on. AQS automatically pulls outside air inside the vehicle or changes to the recirculation mode to prevent contaminants from entering the vehicle.

Using the AQS mode for extended periods may cause the windows to fog. If this happens, turn off AQS and turn to the outside air mode.

Rear Window and Outside Mirror Defogger

For vehicles with a rear window and outside mirror defogger, they only work when the ignition is turned to ON/RUN.

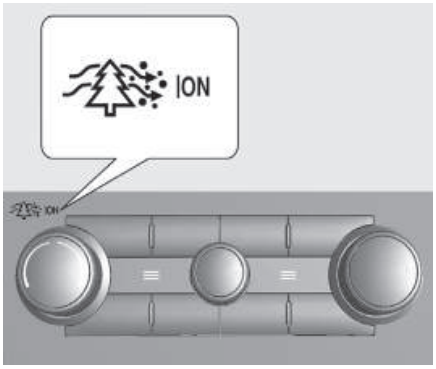
(Rear Window Defogger) : Press to turn the rear window and outside mirror defogger on or off. An indicator light comes on to show that the feature is on.

The rear window defogger turns off automatically within 15 minutes. It can also be turned off by pressing again.

Caution

Using a razor blade or sharp object on the inside rear window can damage the antenna or defogger. Repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Do not stick anything to the rear window.

Ionizer



The ionizer system releases the ion.

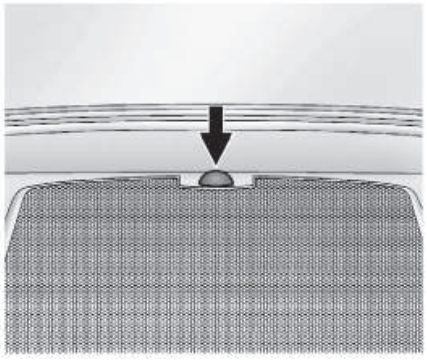
It provides antibacterial effect to climate control and vehicle interior.

When the ignition is switched on, the ionizer is activated automatically.

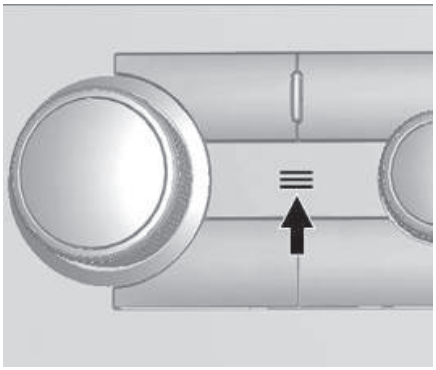
The ionizer is deactivated when the ignition is switched off.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Sensors



The solar sensor located on top of the instrument panel near the windshield monitors the solar heat.



The temperature sensor is located on the climate control faceplate.

The climate control system uses the sensor information to adjust the temperature, fan speed, recirculation, and air delivery mode for best comfort.

Do not cover the sensors or the automatic climate control system will not work properly.

Rear Climate Control System

Rear air conditioning



To turn on the rear air conditioning control system, press the REAR A/C button located on the center of the instrument panel.

Indicator light on the ON/OFF will illuminate.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Set the fan speed to the desired speed with the rear fan speed switch.

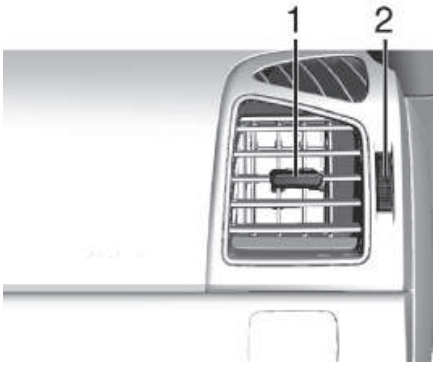
You can also control the direction of airflow through adjustable vents.

To turn off the rear air conditioning control system, press the REAR A/C button once more on the centre of the instrument panel (indicator light on the ON/OFF button is not illuminated) or set the fan speed to the "0" position with the rear fan speed switch.

Air Vents



Move the sliding knob (1) on the air outlets up and down or left and right to direct the airflow.



Use the thumbwheels (2) near the air outlets to open or close off the airflow.

Operation Tips

- Clear away any ice, snow, or leaves from air inlets at the base of the windshield that could block the flow of air into the vehicle.
- Keep the path under the front seats clear of objects to help circulate the air inside the vehicle more effectively.
- Use of non-GM approved hood deflectors can adversely affect the performance of the system.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check with your dealer before adding equipment to the outside of the vehicle.

- Do not insert any objects in the outlets, as failure of the mechanism may occur.

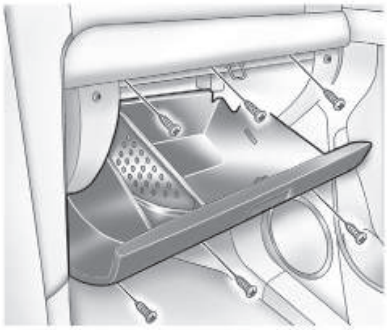
Maintenance

Passenger Compartment Air Filter

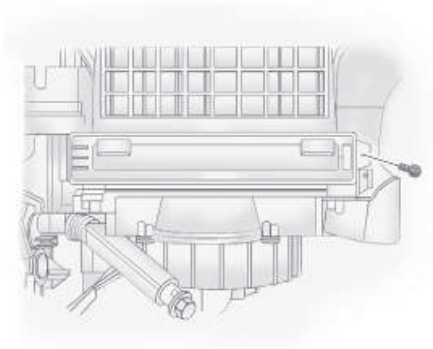
The filter removes dust, pollen, and other airborne irritants from outside air that is pulled into the vehicle.

The filter should be replaced as part of routine scheduled maintenance. *Scheduled Maintenance* ⇨ *296*.

The passenger compartment air filter can be accessed by removing the entire glove box.

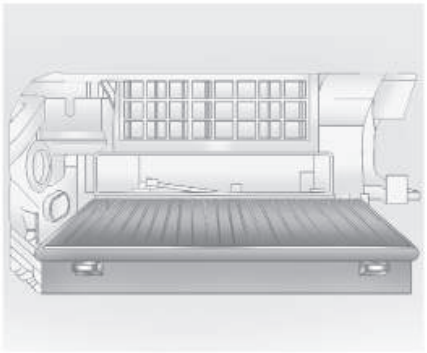


1. Remove the six screws from around the glove box.
2. Lower the loosened glove box housing.
3. Remove the glove box.



4. Remove the air filter cover screw.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



5. Replace the air conditioner filter.

See your dealer if additional assistance is needed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving and Operating

Driving Information
Distracted Driving 175
Defensive Driving 176
Control of a Vehicle 176
Braking 176
Steering 176
Off-Road Recovery 177
Loss of Control 177
Driving on Wet Roads 178
Highway Hypnosis 179
Hill and Mountain Roads 179
Winter Driving 180
If the Vehicle Is Stuck 181
Vehicle Load Limits 182

Starting and Operating
New Vehicle Break-In 185
Ignition Positions (Keyless Access) 185
Ignition Positions (Key Access) 187
Starting the Vehicle 188
Retained Accessory Power (RAP) 191
Automatic Engine Start/Stop Feature 191
Shifting Into Park 193
Shifting out of Park 193
Parking 194
Parking over Things That Burn 194

Engine Exhaust
Engine Exhaust 194
Diesel Particulate Filter 195
Running the Vehicle While Parked 196

Automatic Transmission
Automatic Transmission 196
Manual Mode 198
Fuel Economy Mode 198

Manual Transmission
Manual Transmission 199

Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 200

Brakes
Antilock Brake System (ABS) 201
Parking Brake 201
Brake Assist 203
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 203

Ride Control Systems
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 204
Descent Control System (DCS) 205
Limited-Slip Differential 206
Continuous Damping Control (CDC) 206
Automatic Level Control 206

Cruise Control
Cruise Control 207

Driver Assistance Systems
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) . . . 209
Ultrasonic Parking Assist 211
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) 212

Fuel
Fuel 214
Recommended Fuel 214
Fuel Additives 215
Filling the Tank 215
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 217

Trailer Towing
General Towing Information 217
Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips 218
Trailer Towing 221
Towing Equipment 223
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 225

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Conversions and Add-Ons
Add-On Electrical Equipment 225

Driving Information

Distracted Driving

Distraction comes in many forms and can take your focus from the task of driving. Exercise good judgment and do not let other activities divert your attention away from the road. Many local governments have enacted laws regarding driver distraction. Become familiar with the local laws in your area.

To avoid distracted driving, always keep your eyes on the road, hands on the wheel, and mind on the drive.

- Do not use a phone in demanding driving situations. Use a hands-free method to place or receive necessary phone calls.
- Watch the road. Do not read, take notes, or look up information on phones or other electronic devices.
- Designate a front seat passenger to handle potential distractions.
- Become familiar with vehicle features before driving, such as programming favorite radio stations and adjusting climate control and seat settings. Program all trip information into any navigation device prior to driving.
- Wait until the vehicle is parked to retrieve items that have fallen to the floor.
- Stop or park the vehicle to tend to children.
- Keep pets in an appropriate carrier or restraint.
- Avoid stressful conversations while driving, whether with a passenger or on a cell phone.

⚠ Warning

Taking your eyes off the road too long or too often could cause a crash resulting in injury or death. Focus your attention on driving.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Refer to the Infotainment section for more information on using that system, including pairing and using a cell phone.

Defensive Driving

Defensive driving means “always expect the unexpected.” The first step in driving defensively is to wear the safety belt. *Safety Belts ⇨ 57*.

⚠ Warning

Assume that other road users (pedestrians, bicyclists, and other drivers) are going to be careless and make mistakes. Anticipate what they might do and be ready. In addition:

- Allow enough following distance between you and the driver in front of you.
- Focus on the task of driving.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Driver distraction can cause collisions resulting in injury or possible death. These simple defensive driving techniques could save your life.

Control of a Vehicle

Braking, steering, and accelerating are important factors in helping to control a vehicle while driving.

Braking

Braking action involves perception time and reaction time. Deciding to push the brake pedal is perception time. Actually doing it is reaction time.

Average driver reaction time is about three-quarters of a second. In that time, a vehicle moving at 100 km/h (60 mph) travels 20 m (66 ft), which could be a lot of distance in an emergency.

Helpful braking tips to keep in mind include:

- Keep enough distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.
- Avoid needless heavy braking.
- Keep pace with traffic.

If the engine ever stops while the vehicle is being driven, brake normally but do not pump the brakes. Doing so could make the pedal harder to push down. If the engine stops, there will be some power brake assist but it will be used when the brake is applied. Once the power assist is used up, it can take longer to stop and the brake pedal will be harder to push.

Steering

Hydraulic Power Steering

This vehicle has hydraulic power steering. It may require maintenance. *Power Steering Fluid ⇨ 243*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If power steering assist is lost because the engine stops or because of a system malfunction, the vehicle can be steered but may require increased effort. See your dealer if there is a problem.

Caution
If the steering wheel is turned until it reaches the end of its travel, and is held in that position for more than 10 seconds, damage may occur to the power steering system and there may be loss of power steering assist.

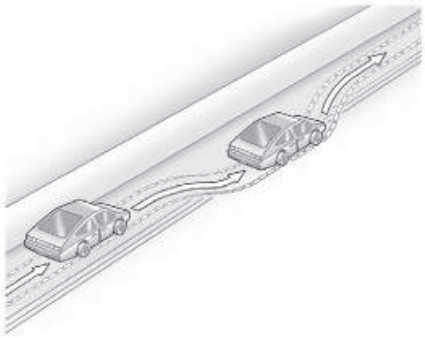
Curve Tips

- Take curves at a reasonable speed.
- Reduce speed before entering a curve.
- Maintain a reasonable steady speed through the curve.
- Wait until the vehicle is out of the curve before accelerating gently into the straightaway.

Steering in Emergencies

- There are some situations when steering around a problem may be more effective than braking.
- Holding both sides of the steering wheel allows you to turn 180 degrees without removing a hand.
- Antilock Brake System (ABS) allows steering while braking.

Off-Road Recovery



The vehicle's right wheels can drop off the edge of a road onto the shoulder while driving. Follow these tips:

1. Ease off the accelerator and then, if there is nothing in the way, steer the vehicle so that it straddles the edge of the pavement.
2. Turn the steering wheel about one-eighth of a turn, until the right front tire contacts the pavement edge.
3. Turn the steering wheel to go straight down the roadway.

Loss of Control

Skidding

There are three types of skids that correspond to the vehicle's three control systems:

- Braking Skid — wheels are not rolling.
- Steering or Cornering Skid — too much speed or steering in a curve causes tires to slip and lose cornering force.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Acceleration Skid — too much throttle causes the driving wheels to spin.

Defensive drivers avoid most skids by taking reasonable care suited to existing conditions, and by not overdriving those conditions. But skids are always possible.

If the vehicle starts to slide, follow these suggestions:

- Ease your foot off the accelerator pedal and steer the way you want the vehicle to go. The vehicle may straighten out. Be ready for a second skid if it occurs.
- Slow down and adjust your driving according to weather conditions. Stopping distance can be longer and vehicle control can be affected when traction is reduced by water, snow, ice, gravel, or other material on the road. Learn to recognize warning clues — such as enough water, ice, or packed snow on the road to make a mirrored surface — and slow down when you have any doubt.
- Try to avoid sudden steering, acceleration, or braking, including reducing vehicle speed by shifting to a lower gear. Any sudden changes could cause the tires to slide.

Remember: Antilock brakes help avoid only the braking skid.

Driving on Wet Roads

Rain and wet roads can reduce vehicle traction and affect your ability to stop and accelerate. Always drive slower in these types of driving conditions and avoid driving through large puddles and deep-standing or flowing water.

⚠ Warning

Wet brakes can cause crashes. They might not work as well in a quick stop and could cause pulling to one side. You could lose control of the vehicle.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

After driving through a large puddle of water or a car/vehicle wash, lightly apply the brake pedal until the brakes work normally.

Flowing or rushing water creates strong forces. Driving through flowing water could cause the vehicle to be carried away. If this happens, you and other vehicle occupants could drown. Do not ignore police warnings and be very cautious about trying to drive through flowing water.

Hydroplaning

Hydroplaning is dangerous. Water can build up under the vehicle's tires so they actually ride on the water. This can happen if the road is wet enough and you are going fast enough. When the vehicle is hydroplaning, it has little or no contact with the road.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

There is no hard and fast rule about hydroplaning. The best advice is to slow down when the road is wet.

Other Rainy Weather Tips

Besides slowing down, other wet weather driving tips include:

- Allow extra following distance.
- Pass with caution.
- Keep windshield wiping equipment in good shape.
- Keep the windshield washer fluid reservoir filled.
- Have good tires with proper tread depth. *Tires* ⇨ *260*.
- Turn off cruise control.

Highway Hypnosis

Always be alert and pay attention to your surroundings while driving. If you become tired or sleepy, find a safe place to park the vehicle and rest.

Other driving tips include:

- Keep the vehicle well ventilated.
- Keep the interior temperature cool.
- Keep your eyes moving — scan the road ahead and to the sides.
- Check the rearview mirror and vehicle instruments often.

Hill and Mountain Roads

Driving on steep hills or through mountains is different than driving on flat or rolling terrain. Tips for driving in these conditions include:

- Keep the vehicle serviced and in good shape.
- Check all fluid levels and brakes, tires, cooling system, and transmission.
- Shift to a lower gear when going down steep or long hills.

⚠ Warning

Using the brakes to slow the vehicle on a long downhill slope can cause brake overheating, can reduce brake performance, and

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

could result in a loss of braking. Shift the transmission to a lower gear to let the engine assist the brakes on a steep downhill slope.

⚠ Warning

Coasting downhill in N (Neutral) or with the ignition off is dangerous. This can cause overheating of the brakes and loss of steering. Always have the engine running and the vehicle in gear.

- Stay in your own lane. Do not swing wide or cut across the center of the road. Drive at speeds that let you stay in your own lane.
- Be alert on top of hills; something could be in your lane (stalled car, accident).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Pay attention to special road signs (falling rocks area, winding roads, long grades, passing or no-passing zones) and take appropriate action.

Winter Driving

Driving on Snow or Ice

Drive carefully when there is snow or ice between the tires and the road, creating less traction or grip. Wet ice can occur at about 0°C (32°F) when freezing rain begins to fall, resulting in even less traction. Avoid driving on wet ice or in freezing rain until roads can be treated with salt or sand.

Drive with caution, whatever the condition. Accelerate gently so traction is not lost. Accelerating too quickly causes the wheels to spin and makes the surface under the tires slick, so there is even less traction.

Try not to break the fragile traction. If you accelerate too fast, the drive wheels will spin and polish the surface under the tires even more.

If equipped, Traction Control should be turned on. *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 204*.

The Antilock Brake System (ABS) improves vehicle stability during hard stops on slippery roads, but apply the brakes sooner than when on dry pavement.

Antilock Brake System (ABS) ⇨ 201.

Allow greater following distance on any slippery road and watch for slippery spots. Icy patches can occur on otherwise clear roads in shaded areas. The surface of a curve or an overpass can remain icy when the surrounding roads are clear. Avoid sudden steering maneuvers and braking while on ice.

Turn off cruise control on slippery surfaces.

Blizzard Conditions

Being stuck in snow can be a serious situation. Stay with the vehicle unless there is help nearby. To get help and keep everyone in the vehicle safe:

- Turn on the hazard warning flashers.
- Tie a red cloth to an outside mirror.

⚠ Warning

Snow can trap engine exhaust under the vehicle. This may cause exhaust gases to get inside. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death.

If the vehicle is stuck in the snow:

- Clear away snow from around the base of your vehicle, especially any that is blocking the exhaust pipe.
- Check again from time to time to be sure snow does not collect there.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

- Open a window about 5 cm (2 in) on the side of the vehicle that is away from the wind to bring in fresh air.
- Fully open the air outlets on or under the instrument panel.
- Adjust the climate control system to a setting that circulates the air inside the vehicle and set the fan speed to the highest setting. See “Climate Control Systems.”

Engine Exhaust ⇨ 194.

To save fuel, run the engine for only short periods as needed to warm the vehicle and then shut the engine off and close the window most of the way to save heat. Repeat this until help arrives but only when you feel really uncomfortable from the cold. Moving about to keep warm also helps.

If it takes some time for help to arrive, now and then when you run the engine, push the accelerator pedal slightly so the engine runs faster than the idle speed. This keeps the battery charged to restart the vehicle and to signal for help with the headlamps. Do this as little as possible to save fuel.

If the Vehicle Is Stuck

Slowly and cautiously spin the wheels to free the vehicle when stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow.

If stuck too severely for the traction system to free the vehicle, turn the traction system off and use the rocking method. *Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control ⇨ 204*.

⚠ Warning

If the vehicle's tires spin at high speed, they can explode, and you or others could be injured. The vehicle can overheat, causing an engine compartment fire or other

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

damage. Spin the wheels as little as possible and avoid going above 56 km/h (35 mph).

Rocking the Vehicle to Get it Out

Turn the steering wheel left and right to clear the area around the front wheels. Turn off any traction system. Shift back and forth between R (Reverse) and a low forward gear, spinning the wheels as little as possible. To prevent transmission wear, wait until the wheels stop spinning before shifting gears. Release the accelerator pedal while shifting, and press lightly on the accelerator pedal when the transmission is in gear. Slowly spinning the wheels in the forward and reverse directions causes a rocking motion that could free the vehicle. If that does not get the vehicle out after a few tries, it might need to be towed out. If the vehicle does need to be towed out, *Towing the Vehicle ⇨ 284*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Load Limits

It is very important to know how much weight the vehicle can carry. This weight is called the vehicle capacity weight and includes the weight of all occupants, cargo and all nonfactory-installed options. Certification label on the vehicle show how much weight it may properly carry.

⚠ Warning

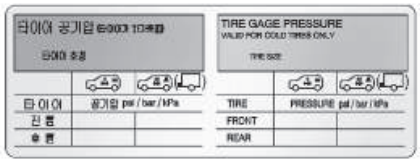
Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

reduce stopping distance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

Tire and Loading Information Label



Label Example

A vehicle-specific Tire and Loading Information label is attached to the center pillar (B-pillar). With the driver door open, you will find the label attached below the door lock post.

The Tire and Loading Information label shows the tire size of the original equipment tires and the recommended cold tire inflation pressures. For more information on tires and inflation, *Tires* ⇨ *260*, *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*.

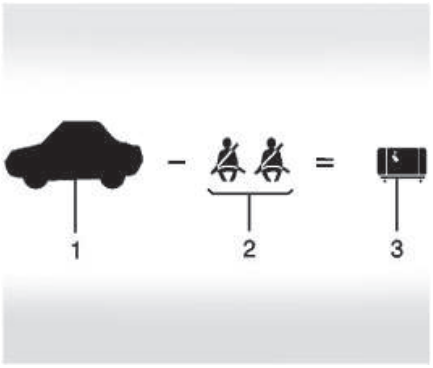
"Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit–

1. Locate the statement "The combined weight of occupants and cargo should never exceed XXX kg or XXX lbs." on your vehicle's placard.
2. Determine the combined weight of the driver and passengers that will be riding in your vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

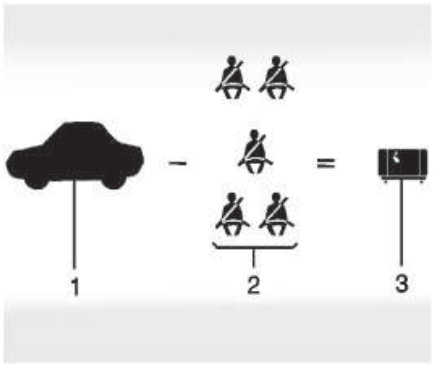
3. Subtract the combined weight of the driver and passengers from XXX kg or XXX lbs.
4. The resulting figure equals the available amount of cargo and luggage load capacity. For example, if the "XXX" amount equals 1400 lbs. and there will be five 150 lb passengers in your vehicle, the amount of available cargo and luggage load capacity is 650 lbs. (1400-750 (5 x 150) = 650 lbs.)
5. Determine the combined weight of luggage and cargo being loaded on the vehicle. That weight may not safely exceed the available cargo and luggage load capacity calculated in Step 4.
6. If your vehicle will be towing a trailer, load from your trailer will be transferred to your vehicle. Consult this manual to determine how this reduces the available cargo and luggage load capacity of your vehicle."

Trailer Towing ⇨ 221.



Example 1

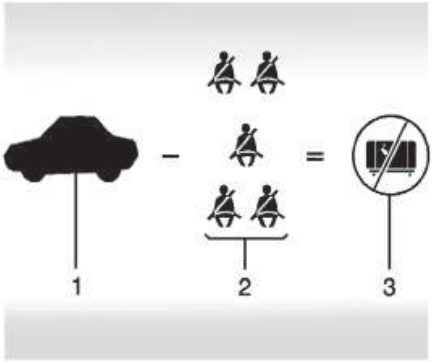
1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 1 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 2 = 136 kg (300 lbs).
3. Available Occupant and Cargo Weight = 317 kg (700 lbs).



Example 2

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 2 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 68 kg (150 lbs) × 5 = 340 kg (750 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 113 kg (250 lbs).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

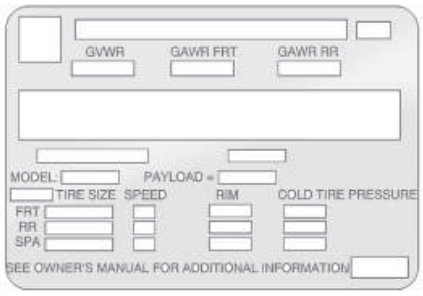


Example 3

1. Vehicle Capacity Weight for Example 3 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
2. Subtract Occupant Weight @ 91 kg (200 lbs) × 5 = 453 kg (1,000 lbs).
3. Available Cargo Weight = 0 kg (0 lbs).

Refer to the vehicle's Tire and Loading Information label for specific information about the vehicle's capacity weight and seating positions. The combined weight of the driver, passengers, and cargo should never exceed the vehicle's capacity weight.

Certification Label



Label Example

A vehicle specific Certification label is attached to the lower area of the center pillar (B-Pillar) on the driver side of the vehicle. The label tells the gross weight capacity of the vehicle, called the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR). The GVWR includes the weight of the vehicle, all occupants, fuel, and cargo. Never exceed the GVWR for the vehicle, or the Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR) for either the front or rear axle.

If the vehicle is carrying a heavy load, it should be spread out. See “Steps for Determining Correct Load Limit” earlier in this section.

⚠ Warning

Do not load the vehicle any heavier than the Gross Vehicle Weight Rating (GVWR), or either the maximum front or rear Gross Axle Weight Rating (GAWR). This can cause systems to break and change the way the vehicle handles. This could cause loss of control and a crash. Overloading can also reduce stopping distance, damage the tires, and shorten the life of the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Things inside the vehicle can strike and injure people in a sudden stop or turn, or in a crash.

- Put things in the cargo area of the vehicle. In the cargo area, put them as far forward as possible. Try to spread the weight evenly.
- Never stack heavier things, like suitcases, inside the vehicle so that some of them are above the tops of the seats.
- Do not leave an unsecured child restraint in the vehicle.
- Secure loose items in the vehicle.
- Do not leave a seat folded down unless needed.

Starting and Operating

New Vehicle Break-In

Caution

The vehicle does not need an elaborate break-in. But it will perform better in the long run if you follow these guidelines:

- Do not drive at any one constant speed, fast or slow, for the first 805 km (500 mi). Do not make full-throttle starts. Avoid downshifting to brake or slow the vehicle.
- Avoid making hard stops for the first 322 km (200 mi) or so. During this time the new brake linings are not yet broken in. Hard stops with new linings can mean premature wear and earlier replacement. Follow this

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

breaking-in guideline every time you get new brake linings.

- Do not tow a trailer during break-in. *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *221* for the trailer towing capabilities of the vehicle and more information.

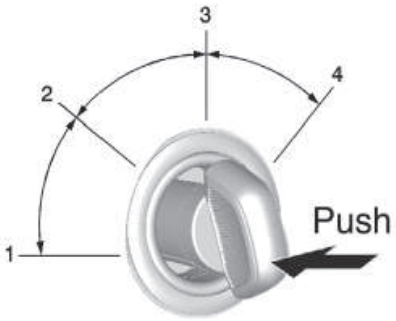
Following break-in, engine speed and load can be gradually increased.

Ignition Positions (Keyless Access)

The keyless ignition control knob can be turned to four different positions.

The keyless access transmitter should be inside the vehicle when trying to push and turn the knob.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1 (STOPPING THE ENGINE/LOCK/OFF) : When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191*.

The keyless ignition control knob cannot be removed from the vehicle. The keyless access transmitter must be inside the vehicle to start the engine.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to N (Neutral). This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to N (Neutral), firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.
3. Come to a complete stop, shift to P (Park), and turn the ignition to OFF. On vehicles with an automatic transmission, the shift lever must be in P (Park) to turn the ignition switch to the OFF position.
4. Set the parking brake. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, switch the ignition to ACC/ACCESSORY.

2 (ACC/ACCESSORY) : This position allows you to use some accessories, and to turn off the engine.

3 (ON/RUN) : This position is for driving and preheating for diesel engine. It is the position the ignition switch returns to after the engine starts, and the control knob is released. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The battery could be drained if you leave the ignition in the ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

4 (START) : This position starts the engine. The brake pedal must be applied to start the engine.

Ignition Positions (Key Access)

The ignition switch has four different positions.



Caution

Using a tool to force the key to turn in the ignition could cause damage to the switch or break the key. Use the correct key, make sure it is all the way in, and turn it only with your hand. If the key cannot be turned by hand, see your dealer.

The key must be fully extended to start the vehicle.

LOCK (STOPPING THE ENGINE/ LOCK/OFF) : When the vehicle is stopped, turn the ignition switch to LOCK/OFF to turn the engine off. Retained Accessory Power (RAP) will remain active. *Retained Accessory Power (RAP)* ⇨ *191*.

This is the only position from which you can remove the key. This locks the steering wheel, ignition, and automatic transmission. Push in the ignition switch as you turn the key toward you.

The ignition switch can bind in the LOCK/OFF position with your wheels turned off center. If this happens, move the steering wheel from right to left while turning the key to ACC/ACCESSORY. If this doesn't work, then the vehicle needs service.

Do not turn the engine off when the vehicle is moving. This will cause a loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags.

If the vehicle must be shut off in an emergency:

1. Brake using a firm and steady pressure. Do not pump the brakes repeatedly. This may deplete power assist, requiring increased brake pedal force.
2. Shift the vehicle to neutral. This can be done while the vehicle is moving. After shifting to neutral, firmly apply the brakes and steer the vehicle to a safe location.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Come to a complete stop. Shift to P (Park) with an automatic transmission, or Neutral with a manual transmission. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Set the parking brake. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*.

⚠ Warning

Turning off the vehicle while moving may cause loss of power assist in the brake and steering systems and disable the airbags. While driving, only shut the vehicle off in an emergency.

If the vehicle cannot be pulled over, and must be shut off while driving, turn the ignition to ACC/ ACCESSORY.

ACC (ACC/ACCESSORY) : This position provides power to some of the electrical accessories. It unlocks the steering wheel and ignition. To move the key from ACC/ ACCESSORY to LOCK/OFF, push in the key and then turn it to LOCK/OFF.

ON (ON/RUN) : This position is for driving and preheating for diesel engine. The ignition switch stays in this position when the engine is running. This position can be used to operate the electrical accessories. This position can also be used for service and diagnostics, and to verify the proper operation of the malfunction indicator lamp as may be required for emission inspection purposes.

To shift out of P (Park), turn the ignition to ON/RUN and apply the brake pedal.

The battery could be drained if you leave the key in the ACC/ ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position with the engine off. You may not be able to start the vehicle if the battery is allowed to drain for an extended period of time.

START : This position starts the engine. When the engine starts, release the key. The ignition switch will return to ON/RUN for normal driving.

Starting the Vehicle

Automatic Transmission

Move the shift lever to P (Park) or N (Neutral). The engine will not start in any other position. To restart the vehicle when it is already moving, use N (Neutral) only.

Caution

Do not try to shift to P (Park) if the vehicle is moving. If you do, you could damage the transmission. Shift to P (Park) only when the vehicle is stopped.

Manual Transmission

Press the brake pedal, shift to N (Neutral), and apply the parking brake. Hold the clutch pedal to the floor and start the engine. The vehicle will not start if the clutch pedal is not all the way down.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting Procedure (Key Access)

1. Turn the key to the ACC position, and move the steering wheel slightly to release the steering wheel lock.

Note

If your vehicle has diesel engine, turn the ignition control knob to the ON position for preheating until 00 goes out.

With the accelerator pedal released, turn the ignition to START. When the engine starts, let go of the key. The idle speed will slow down as the engine warms. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

Caution

Holding the key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause the battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage the starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining the battery or damaging the starter.

2. If the engine does not start, wait about 15 seconds and try again to start the engine by turning the ignition to START. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.

   When the engine has run about 10 seconds to warm up, the vehicle is ready to be driven. Do not run the engine at high speed when it is cold.

   If the weather is below freezing (0 °C or 32 °F), let the engine run for a few minutes to warm up.

3. If the engine still will not start, or starts but then stops, it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the key in START for about three seconds. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing, but this time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *225*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Starting Procedure (Keyless Access)

If the transmitter is not in the vehicle, or something is interfering with the transmitter, the Drive Information Center (DIC) will display a message. *Key and Lock Messages* ⇨ *116*.

Note

If your vehicle has diesel engine, turn the ignition control knob to the ON position for preheating until 00 goes out.

1. With the accelerator pedal released, press the brake pedal, and turn the ignition control knob to START. If the ignition control knob does not turn, try pushing in and turning it again. When the engine begins cranking, let go of the ignition control knob. The idle speed will slow down as the engine warms. Do not race the engine immediately after starting it. Operate the engine and transmission gently to allow the oil to warm up and lubricate all moving parts.

Caution

Holding the key in START for longer than 15 seconds at a time will cause the battery to be drained much sooner. And the excessive heat can damage the starter motor. Wait about 15 seconds between each try to help avoid draining the battery or damaging the starter.

2. If the engine does not start, wait about 15 seconds and try again to start the engine by turning the ignition control knob to START. Wait about 15 seconds between each try.

   When the engine has run about 10 seconds to warm up, the vehicle is ready to be driven. Do not run the engine at high speed when it is cold.

   If the weather is below freezing (0 °C or 32 °F), let the engine run for a few minutes to warm up.

3. If the engine still will not start, or starts but then stops, it could be flooded with too much gasoline. Try pushing the accelerator pedal all the way to the floor and holding it there as you hold the ignition control knob in START for about three seconds. If the vehicle starts briefly but then stops again, do the same thing, but this time keep the pedal down for five or six seconds. This clears the extra gasoline from the engine.

Caution

If you add electrical parts or accessories, you could change the way the engine operates. Any resulting damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. *Add-On Electrical Equipment* ⇨ *225*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Retained Accessory Power (RAP)

These vehicle accessories may be used for up to 10 minutes after the ignition is turned to the LOCK/OFF position:

- Outside Mirror
- Power Windows
- Sunroof (if equipped)
- Radio

The outside mirror, power windows, and sunroof will function until a door is opened.

The radio will function until the driver door is opened.

If no door is opened after the ignition is turned to the LOCK/OFF position, all accessories will be turned off after 10 minutes.

Automatic Engine Start/ Stop Feature

Stop-start system

The stop-start system helps to save fuel and to reduce the exhaust emission. The engine turns off automatically when the vehicle is at low speed or standstill. The engine will restart automatically as soon as the clutch is depressed.

Activation

The stop-start system is activated as soon as ignition is ON.

Deactivation



Deactivate the stop-start system manually by pressing the eco button.

The deactivation is indicated by the LED in the button going off.

Automatic engine stop

- Shift the selector lever to N
- Release the clutch pedal

The engine will be turned off while the ignition ON.

The engine stop is indicated by the needle on the AUTOSTOP position in the tachometer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

During an automatic engine stop, the heating performance, power steering and brake performance will maintain.

Air conditioning system may or may not inhibit the stop and start system according to the cooling performance.

Conditions for an automatic engine stop

- The stop-start system is not manually deactivated
- The bonnet is fully closed
- The driver’s door is closed or the driver’s safety belt is fastened
- The battery is sufficiently charged and in good condition
- The engine is warmed up
- The engine coolant temperature is not too low
- The ambient temperature is not too low or high
- The defrosting function is not activated
- Fan control knob of manual climate control is not in step 4 (max airflow)
- A/C button of automatic climate control is not pressed
- The brake vacuum is sufficient
- The vehicle has moved since the last automatic engine stop

Restart of the engine by the driver

Depress the clutch pedal to restart the engine.

The engine start is indicated by the needle on the idle speed position in the tachometer.

If the selector lever is shifted out of N before depressing the clutch first, illuminates.

The indicator is goes out as soon as the clutch pedal is depressed.

Restart of the engine by the stop-start system

If one of the following conditions occurs during engine stop, the engine will be restarted automatically by the stop-start system.

- The stop-start system is manually deactivated
- The bonnet is opened
- The driver’s safety belt is unfastened and the driver's door is opened
- The engine temperature is too low
- The battery is low
- The brake vacuum is not sufficient
- The vehicle starts to move
- The ambient temperature is too low or high
- The defrosting function is activated
- Fan control knob of manual climate control is in step 4 (max airflow)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- A/C button of automatic climate control is pressed

Shifting Into Park

Use this procedure to shift into P (Park):

1. Hold the brake pedal down and set the parking brake.

   Parking Brake ⇨ 201.
2. Hold the button on the shift lever and push the lever toward the front of the vehicle into P (Park).
3. Turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF.
4. Remove the key (if equipped).

Leaving the Vehicle With the Engine Running

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to leave the vehicle with the engine running. It could overheat and catch fire.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). *Shifting Into Park ⇨ 193*. If you are towing a trailer, *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips ⇨ 218*.

If you have to leave the vehicle with the engine running, the vehicle must be in P (Park) and the parking brake set.

Release the button and check that the shift lever cannot be moved out of P (Park).

Torque Lock

Torque lock is when the weight of the vehicle puts too much force on the parking pawl in the transmission. This happens when parking on a hill and shifting the transmission into P (Park) is not done properly and then it is difficult to shift out of P (Park). To prevent torque lock, set the parking brake and then shift into P (Park). To find out how, see “Shifting Into Park” listed previously.

If torque lock does occur, the vehicle may need to be pushed uphill by another vehicle to relieve the parking pawl pressure, so you can shift out of P (Park).

Shifting out of Park

To shift out of P (Park):

1. Apply the brake pedal.
2. Turn the ignition to ON/RUN.
3. Press the shift lever button.
4. Move the shift lever.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If you still are unable to shift out of P (Park):

1. Fully release the shift lever button.
2. Hold the brake pedal down and press the shift lever button again.
3. Move the shift lever.

If you still cannot move the shift lever from P (Park), see your dealer for service.

Parking

If the vehicle has a manual transmission, before getting out of the vehicle, move the shift lever into R (Reverse), and apply the electric parking brake. *Parking Brake* ⇨ *201*. Once the shift lever has been placed into R (Reverse) with the clutch pedal pressed in, turn the ignition to LOCK/OFF, remove the key (if equipped), and release the clutch.

If parking on a hill, or if the vehicle is pulling a trailer, *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *218*.

Parking over Things That Burn

⚠ Warning

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under the vehicle and ignite. Do not park over papers, leaves, dry grass, or other things that can burn.

Engine Exhaust

⚠ Warning

Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO), which cannot be seen or smelled. Exposure to CO can cause unconsciousness and even death.

Exhaust may enter the vehicle if:

- The vehicle idles in areas with poor ventilation (parking garages, tunnels, deep snow that may block underbody airflow or tail pipes).
- The exhaust smells or sounds strange or different.
- The exhaust system leaks due to corrosion or damage.
- The vehicle exhaust system has been modified, damaged, or improperly repaired.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

- There are holes or openings in the vehicle body from damage or aftermarket modifications that are not completely sealed.

If unusual fumes are detected or if it is suspected that exhaust is coming into the vehicle:

- Drive it only with the windows completely down.
- Have the vehicle repaired immediately.

Never park the vehicle with the engine running in an enclosed area such as a garage or a building that has no fresh air ventilation.

Diesel Particulate Filter

The diesel particulate filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature.

This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take more than 15 minutes. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically. If the control indicator (DPF lamps) illuminates or flashes, it is necessary to activate the cleaning process of Diesel Particulate Filter by continuing driving safely until DPF lamps off at the cluster. In case, constant driving will be better for cleaning process.

⚠ Warning

Be sure the following precautions are taken because the exhaust parts are raised to high temperature during regeneration of DPF.

- Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not place your vehicle over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.
- Turn the ignition OFF as soon as your vehicle enters a garage.
- Do not go near the hot exhaust parts including exhaust tail pipe.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Running the Vehicle While Parked

It is better not to park with the engine running.

If the vehicle is left with the engine running, follow the proper steps to be sure the vehicle will not move. *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *193*, *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *194*. If the vehicle has a manual transmission, *Parking* ⇨ *194*.

If parking on a hill and pulling a trailer, *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *218*.

Automatic Transmission



There are several different positions for the automatic transmission.

P (Park) : This position locks the front wheels. It is the best position to use when starting the engine because the vehicle cannot move easily.

⚠ Warning

It is dangerous to get out of the vehicle if the shift lever is not fully in P (Park) with the parking brake firmly set. The vehicle can roll.

Do not leave the vehicle when the engine is running. If you have left the engine running, the vehicle can move suddenly. You or others could be injured. To be sure the vehicle will not move, even when you are on fairly level ground, always set the parking brake and move the shift lever to P (Park). *Shifting Into Park* ⇨ *193*, *Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips* ⇨ *218*.

Make sure the shift lever is fully in P (Park) before starting the engine. The vehicle has an automatic transmission shift lock control system. The regular brakes must be applied first and then the shift lever button pressed before you can shift from P (Park) when the ignition key is in ON/RUN. If you cannot shift out

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

of P (Park), ease pressure on the shift lever and push the shift lever all the way into P (Park) as you maintain brake application. Then press the shift lever button and move the shift lever into another gear. *Shifting out of Park ⇨ 193*.

R (Reverse) : Use this gear to back up.

Caution

Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

To rock the vehicle back and forth to get out of snow, ice or sand without damaging the transmission, *If the Vehicle Is Stuck ⇨ 181*.

N (Neutral) : In this position, the engine does not connect with the wheels. To restart the engine when the vehicle is already moving, use N (Neutral) only. Also, use N (Neutral) when the vehicle is being towed.

⚠ Warning

Shifting into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed is dangerous. Unless your foot is firmly on the brake pedal, the vehicle could move very rapidly. You could lose control and hit people or objects. Do not shift into a drive gear while the engine is running at high speed.

Caution

Shifting out of P (Park) or N (Neutral) with the engine running at high speed may damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Be sure the engine is not running at high speed when shifting the vehicle.

D (Drive) : This position is for normal driving, and allows the transmission to shift into all forward gears. It provides the best fuel economy.

Downshifting the transmission in slippery road conditions could result in skidding. “Skidding” under *Loss of Control ⇨ 177*.

Caution

Spinning the tires or holding the vehicle in one place on a hill using only the accelerator pedal may damage the transmission. The repair will not be covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are stuck, do not spin the tires. When stopping on a hill, use the brakes to hold the vehicle in place.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Manual Mode

Manual Shift Mode (MSM) (Automatic Transmission)

To use this feature, if equipped:

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) into the manual gate.
2. Push the shift lever forward toward the plus (+) to upshift or rearward toward the minus (−) to downshift.

In manual shift mode all forward gears can be selected.

While using the MSM feature the vehicle will have operation similar to a manual transmission. You can use this for sport driving or when driving hilly roads to stay in gear longer or to downshift for more power or for engine braking.

The transmission will only allow you to shift into gears appropriate for the vehicle speed:

- The transmission will not automatically shift to the next higher gear without moving the shift lever.
- The transmission will not allow shifting to the next lower gear if the vehicle speed is too high.

In manual mode, downward shifts are made automatically when the vehicle slows down. When the vehicle stops, 1 (First) gear is automatically selected.

2 (Second) Gear Start Feature

When accelerating the vehicle from a stop in snowy and icy conditions, you may want to select 2 (Second) gear. A higher gear, and light application of the gas pedal, may allow you to gain more traction on slippery surfaces.

With the Manual Shift Mode, the vehicle can accelerate from a stop in 2 (Second).

1. Move the shift lever from D (Drive) into the manual gate.
2. With the vehicle stopped, move the shift lever forward to select 2 (Second). The vehicle will start from a stop position in 2 (Second).
3. Once the vehicle is moving, select the desired drive gear or move the shift lever to the D (Drive) position.

Fuel Economy Mode

The vehicle may have a fuel economy mode. When engaged, fuel economy mode can improve the vehicle's fuel economy.



Pressing the ECO button on the instrument panel will engage fuel economy mode. When activated, the eco light in the instrument

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

cluster will come on. *Fuel Economy Light* ⇨ *113*. Pressing the button a second time will turn fuel economy mode off.

When fuel economy mode is on:

- The transmission will upshift sooner, and downshift later.
- The torque converter will lock–up sooner, and stay on longer.
- The gas pedal will be less sensitive.
- The vehicle's computers will more aggressively shut off fuel to the engine under deceleration.

Do not use fuel economy mode while towing.

Manual Transmission



1 (First) : Press the clutch pedal and shift into 1 (First). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

You can shift into 1 (First) when you are going less than 32 km/h (20 mph). If you have come to a complete stop and it is hard to shift into 1 (First), put the shift lever in Neutral and let up on the clutch. Press the clutch pedal back down. Then shift into 1 (First).

2 (Second) : Press the clutch pedal as you let up on the accelerator pedal and shift into 2 (Second). Then, slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), 6 (Sixth) : Shift into 3 (Third), 4 (Fourth), 5 (Fifth), and 6 (Sixth) the same way you do for 2 (Second). Slowly let up on the clutch pedal as you press the accelerator pedal.

If vehicle speed drops below 32 km/h (20 mph), or if the engine is not running smoothly, you should downshift to the next lower gear. You may have to downshift two or more gears to keep the engine running smoothly or for good performance.

To stop, let up on the accelerator pedal and press the brake pedal. Just before the vehicle stops, press the clutch pedal and the brake pedal, and shift to Neutral.

Neutral : Use this position when you start or idle the engine.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

R (Reverse) : To back up, press down on the clutch pedal and shift into R (Reverse). Let up on the clutch pedal slowly while pressing the accelerator pedal.

Caution
Shifting to R (Reverse) while the vehicle is moving forward could damage the transmission. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Shift to R (Reverse) only after the vehicle is stopped.

Also, use R (Reverse) along with the parking brake for parking the vehicle.

Drive Systems

All-Wheel Drive

If your vehicle has active on demand all-wheel drive (AWD), the AWD system operates automatically without any action required by the driver. If the front drive wheels begin to slip, the rear wheels will automatically begin to drive the vehicle as required. There may be a slight engagement noise during hard use but this is normal.

The AWD warning light blinks when AWD system is temporarily disabled. *All-Wheel-Drive Light* ⇨ *108*. If the light blinks briefly, and then goes out, this is normal and does not indicate a system fault. However if the light blinks continuously, see your dealer.

The light comes on to indicate that there is a malfunction in the AWD system. If it happens, see your dealer.

When using a compact spare tire on an AWD vehicle, the system automatically detects the compact spare and disables AWD. To restore AWD operation and prevent excessive wear on the system, replace the compact spare with a full-size tire as soon as possible. *Compact Spare Tire* ⇨ *280*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Brakes

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

This vehicle has ABS, an advanced electronic braking system that helps prevent a braking skid.

When the vehicle begins to drive away, ABS checks itself.
A momentary motor or clicking noise might be heard while this test is going on, and it might even be noticed that the brake pedal moves a little. This is normal.



If there is a problem with ABS, this warning light stays on. *Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning Light* ⇨ *107*.

If driving safely on a wet road and it becomes necessary to slam on the brakes and continue braking to avoid a sudden obstacle, a computer senses the wheels are slowing down. If one of the wheels is about to stop rolling, the computer will separately work the brakes at each wheel.

ABS can change the brake pressure to each wheel, as required, faster than any driver could. This can help you steer around the obstacle while braking hard.

As the brakes are applied, the computer keeps receiving updates on wheel speed and controls braking pressure accordingly.

Remember: ABS does not change the time needed to get a foot up to the brake pedal or always decrease stopping distance. If you get too close to the vehicle in front of you, there will not be enough time to apply the brakes if that vehicle suddenly slows or stops. Always leave enough room up ahead to stop, even with ABS.

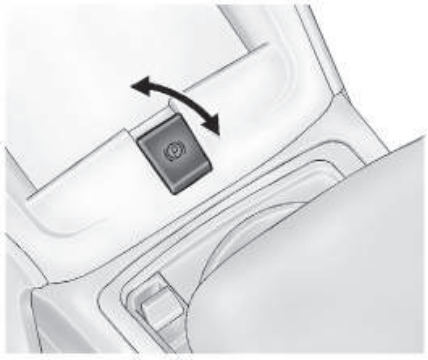
Using ABS

Do not pump the brakes. Just hold the brake pedal down firmly and let ABS work. You may hear the ABS pump or motor operating and feel the brake pedal pulsate. This is normal.

Braking in Emergencies

ABS allows you to steer and brake at the same time. In many emergencies, steering can help more than even the very best braking.

Parking Brake



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The vehicle has an Electric Parking Brake (EPB). The switch for the EPB is in the center console. The EPB can always be activated, even if the ignition is OFF. To prevent draining the battery, avoid repeated cycles of the EPB system when the engine is not running.

The system has a parking brake status light and a parking brake warning light. *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *107*. In case of insufficient electrical power, the EPB cannot be applied or released.

Before leaving the vehicle, check the parking brake status lamp to insure the parking brake is applied.

EPB Apply

The EPB can be applied any time the vehicle is stopped. The EPB is applied by momentarily lifting up on the EPB switch. Once fully applied, the parking brake status light will be on. While the brake is being applied, the status lamp will flash until full apply is reached. If the light does not come on, or remains flashing, you need to have the vehicle serviced. Do not drive the vehicle if the parking brake status light is flashing. See your dealer. *Electric Parking Brake Light* ⇨ *107*.

If the EPB is applied while the vehicle is in motion, a chime will sound. The vehicle will decelerate as long as the switch is held in the up position. Releasing the EPB switch during the deceleration will release the parking brake. If the switch is held in the up position until the vehicle comes to a stop, the EPB will remain applied.

If the parking brake status light flashes continuously, the EPB is only partially applied or released, or there is a problem with the EPB. If this light flashes continuously, release the EPB, and attempt to apply it again. If this light continues to flash, do not drive the vehicle. See your dealer.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To apply the EPB when this light is on, lift up on the EPB switch and hold it in the up position. Full application of the parking brake by the EPB system may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light remains on. If the parking brake warning light is on, see your dealer.

If the EPB fails to apply, the rear wheels should be blocked to prevent vehicle movement.

EPB Release

To release the EPB, place the ignition in the ACC/ACCESSORY or ON/RUN position, apply and hold the brake pedal, and push down momentarily on the EPB switch. If you attempt to release the EPB without the brake pedal applied, a chime will sound and the press brake pedal light will appear. The EPB is released when the parking brake status light is off.

If the parking brake warning light is on, the EPB has detected an error in another system and is operating with reduced functionality. To release the EPB when this light is on, push down on the EPB switch and hold it in the down position.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

EPB release may take a longer period of time than normal when this light is on. Continue to hold the switch until the parking brake status light is off. If the light is on, see your dealer.

Caution
Driving with the parking brake on can overheat the brake system and cause premature wear or damage to brake system parts. Make sure that the parking brake is fully released and the brake warning light is off before driving.

Automatic EPB Release

The EPB will automatically release if the vehicle is running, placed into gear and an attempt is made to drive away. Avoid rapid acceleration when the EPB is applied, to preserve parking brake lining life.

Brake Assist

The Brake Assist feature is designed to assist the driver in stopping or decreasing vehicle speed in emergency driving conditions. This feature uses the stability system hydraulic brake control module to supplement the power brake system under conditions where the driver has quickly and forcefully applied the brake pedal in an attempt to quickly stop or slow down the vehicle. The stability system hydraulic brake control module increases brake pressure at each corner of the vehicle until the ABS activates. Minor brake pedal pulsation or pedal movement during this time is normal and the driver should continue to apply the brake pedal as the driving situation dictates. The Brake Assist feature will automatically disengage when the brake pedal is released or brake pedal pressure is quickly decreased.

Hill Start Assist (HSA)

This vehicle has an HSA feature, which may be useful when the vehicle is stopped on a grade sufficient enough to activate HSA. This feature is designed to prevent the vehicle from rolling, either forward or rearward, during vehicle drive off. After the driver completely stops and holds the vehicle in a complete standstill on a grade, HSA will be automatically activated. During the transition period between when the driver releases the brake pedal and starts to accelerate to drive off on a grade, HSA holds the braking pressure for a maximum of two seconds to ensure that there is no rolling. The brakes will automatically release when the accelerator pedal is applied within the two-second window. It will not activate if the vehicle is in a drive gear and facing downhill, or if the vehicle is facing uphill and in R (Reverse).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Ride Control Systems

Traction Control/ Electronic Stability Control

The vehicle has a Traction Control System (TCS) and an Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. These systems help limit wheel slip and assist the driver in maintaining control, especially on slippery road conditions.

TCS activates if it senses that any of the drive wheels are spinning or beginning to lose traction. When this happens, TCS applies the brakes to the spinning wheels and reduces engine power to limit wheel spin.

ESC activates when the vehicle senses a difference between the intended path and the direction the vehicle is actually traveling. ESC selectively applies braking pressure to any one of the vehicle wheel brakes to assist the driver in keeping the vehicle on the intended path.

If cruise control is being used and traction control or ESC begins to limit wheel spin, cruise control will disengage. Cruise control may be turned back on when road conditions allow.

Both systems come on automatically when the vehicle is started and begins to move. The systems may be heard or felt while they are operating or while performing diagnostic checks. This is normal and does not mean there is a problem with the vehicle.

It is recommended to leave both systems on for normal driving conditions, but it may be necessary to turn TCS off if the vehicle gets stuck in sand, mud, ice, or snow. *If the Vehicle Is Stuck ⇨ 181* and "Turning the Systems Off and On" later in this section.



The indicator light for both systems is in the instrument cluster. This light will:

- Flash when TCS is limiting wheel spin.
- Flash when ESC is activated.
- Turn on and stay on when either system is not working.

If either system fails to turn on or to activate, comes on and stays on to indicate that the system is inactive and is not assisting the driver in maintaining control. The vehicle is safe to drive, but driving should be adjusted accordingly.

If comes on and stays on:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn the engine off and wait 15 seconds.
3. Start the engine.

Drive the vehicle. If comes on and stays on, the vehicle may need more time to diagnose the problem. If the condition persists, see your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If cruise control is being used when ESC activates, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be re-engaged when road conditions allow. *Cruise Control* ⇨ *207*.

Turning the Systems Off and On



The button for TCS and ESC is on the center stack.

Caution
Do not repeatedly brake or accelerate heavily when TCS is off. The vehicle driveline could be damaged.

To turn off TCS and ESC, press the OFF. The ESC Off light OFF comes on and stays on in the instrument cluster.

If TCS is limiting wheel spin when the OFF is pressed, the system will not turn off until the wheels stop spinning.

To turn TCS and ESC on again, press and release the OFF. The ESC Off light OFF in the instrument cluster turns off.

Adding accessories can affect the vehicle performance. *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *227*.

Active Rollover Protection

This function is part of the ESC system. When the vehicle moves in an extremely unstable manner, this function helps the vehicle maintain normal stability.

Descent Control System (DCS)

The DCS allows the vehicle to travel at a low speed without applying the brake.

The vehicle will automatically decelerate to a low speed and remain there when DCS is turned on.

Use only when descending steep grades while driving off-road. Do not use when driving on normal road surfaces.

Some noise or vibration from the brake system may be heard or felt when DCS is active. This is normal.



Turn the system on by pressing the DCS button located on the center stack. The green DCS light comes on steady when the system is on.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



The green DCS light flashes on the instrument panel while driving at speeds below 50 km/h (30 mph) to show the system is operating.

DCS will not activate at speeds above 50 km/h (30 mph), even if the button is pressed.

Caution
DCS is designed for driving down steep off-road hills. Unnecessary use of DCS can cause malfunctions in the brake system or ESC. Do not use DCS when driving on normal road surfaces.

To turn the system off, press the DCS button again and the DCS light turns off. Applying the brake or accelerator will also cause DCS to turn off.

The amber DCS light flashes when the system is not ready due to high temperature through severe or repeated braking. The light will turn off when the system cools.

The amber DCS light comes on steady if there is a system malfunction. See your dealer for service.

Limited-Slip Differential

Vehicles with a limited-slip differential can give more traction on snow, mud, ice, sand, or gravel. It works like a standard differential most of the time, but when traction is low, this feature allows the drive wheel with the most traction to move the vehicle.

Continuous Damping Control (CDC)

The CDC feature provides superior vehicle ride and handling under a variety of passenger and loading conditions.

The system is fully automatic and uses a computer controller to continuously monitor vehicle speed, wheel to body position, lift/dive, and steering position of the vehicle. The controller then sends signals to each shock absorber to independently adjust the damping level to provide the optimum vehicle ride.

Automatic Level Control

This feature keeps the rear of the vehicle level as the load changes. The system is automatic and no adjustments are necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Cruise Control

For vehicles with cruise control, a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more can be maintained without keeping your foot on the accelerator. Cruise control does not work at speeds below 40 km/h (25 mph).

When the brakes are applied, or the cancel button pressed, the cruise control turns off.

If the vehicle is in cruise control when the traction control system, if equipped, begins to limit wheel spin, the cruise control automatically disengages. The cruise control can be turned back on, when road conditions are safe again.

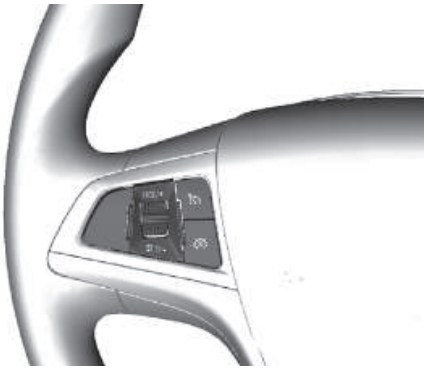
⚠ Warning

Cruise control can be dangerous where you cannot drive safely at a steady speed. Do not use cruise control on winding roads or in heavy traffic.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Cruise control can be dangerous on slippery roads. On such roads, fast changes in tire traction can cause excessive wheel slip, and you could lose control. Do not use cruise control on slippery roads.



The cruise control buttons are located on the left side of the steering wheel.

(On/Off) : Press to turn the cruise control on or off.

RES/+ (Accelerate/Resume) : Press to make the vehicle resume to a previously set speed or accelerate.

SET/- (Set/Coast) : Press to set the speed and activate cruise control or make the vehicle decelerate.

(Cancel) : Press to disengage the cruise control without erasing the set speed from memory.

Setting Cruise Control

If the cruise button is on when not in use, it could get bumped and go into cruise when not desired. Keep the cruise control switch off when cruise is not being used.

1. Press to turn cruise control on.
2. Get up to the speed desired.
3. Press SET/- and release it. The cruise control light comes on in the instrument panel cluster to show that the cruise control is on.
4. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Resuming a Set Speed

If the cruise control is set at a desired speed and then the brakes are applied, or ⛐ is pressed, the cruise control is disengaged without erasing the set speed from memory.

Once the vehicle speed is about 40 km/h (25 mph) or more, briefly press RES/+. The vehicle returns to the previously set speed and stays there.

If RES/+ is held, the vehicle speed continues to increase until the button is released, the brake pedal is applied, or ⛐ is pressed. Do not hold in the RES/+ button, unless you want the vehicle to go faster.

Increasing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Use the accelerator pedal to get to a higher speed. Press SET/-, then release the button and the accelerator pedal.
- Press and hold the RES/+ until the desired speed is reached, and then release it.
- To increase the vehicle speed in small amounts, briefly press RES/+ and then release it. Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) faster.

The accelerate feature only works after the cruise control is turned on by pressing SET/-.

Reducing Speed While Using Cruise Control

If the cruise control system is already activated:

- Press SET/- until the lower speed desired is reached, then release it.
- To decrease the vehicle speed in small amounts, briefly press SET/- . Each time this is done, the vehicle goes about 2 km/h (1.2 mph) slower.

Passing Another Vehicle While Using Cruise Control

Use the accelerator pedal to increase the vehicle speed. When you take your foot off the pedal, the vehicle will slow down to the previously set cruise control speed.

Using Cruise Control on Hills

How well the cruise control works on hills depends upon the vehicle speed, load, and the steepness of the hills. When going up steep hills, you might have to step on the accelerator pedal to maintain the vehicle speed. When going downhill, you might have to brake or shift to a lower gear to keep the vehicle speed down. When the brakes are applied the cruise control is disengaged.

Disengaging Cruise Control

There are two ways to end cruise control:

- Step lightly on the brake pedal or press the clutch pedal, if you have a manual transmission.
- Press ⛐.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Press .

Erasing Speed Memory

The cruise control set speed is erased from memory by pressing or if the vehicle is turned off.

Driver Assistance Systems

Rear Vision Camera (RVC)

The RVC system is designed to help the driver when backing up by displaying a view of the area behind the vehicle. When the key is in the ON/START position and the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image automatically appears on the LCD Module Display.

Once the driver shifts out of R (Reverse), the video image automatically disappears from the LCD Module Display.

⚠ Warning

The Rear Vision Camera (RVC) system does not replace driver vision.

RVC does not:

- Detect objects that are outside the camera's field of view, below the bumper, or underneath the vehicle.
- Detect children, pedestrians, bicyclists, or pets.

Do not back the vehicle by only looking at the RVC screen, or use the screen during longer, higher speed backing maneuvers or where there could be cross-traffic. You're judged distances using the screen will differ from actual distances.

If you do not use proper care before backing up, you could hit a vehicle, child, pedestrian, bicyclist, or pet, resulting in

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

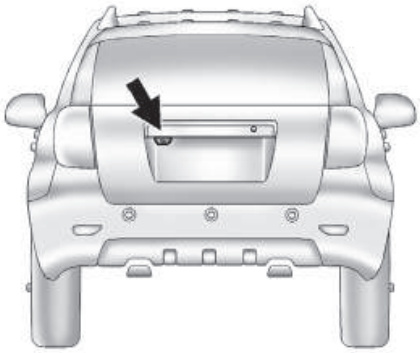
Warning (Continued)

vehicle damage, injury, or death. Even though the vehicle has the RVC system, always check carefully before backing up by checking behind and around the vehicle.

Turning the rear vision

Camera System Off or On When the key is in the ON/START position and the driver shifts the vehicle into R (Reverse), the video image will appear when the CAM button is pressed on the infotainment system.

Rear vision camera location



The camera is located in the rear of the vehicle.

The area displayed by the camera is limited and does not display objects that are close to either corner or under the bumper. The area displayed can vary depending on vehicle orientation or road conditions. The distance of the image that appears on the screen differs from the actual distance.

When the system does not seem to work properly

The RVC system might not work properly or display a clear image if:

- The RVC is turned off.
- It is dark.
- The sun or the beam of headlamps is shining directly into the camera lens.
- Ice, snow, mud, or anything else builds up on the camera lens.

  Clean the lens, rinse it with water, and wipe it with a soft cloth.
- The back of the vehicle is in an accident. The position and mounting angle of the camera can change or the camera can be affected. Be sure to have the camera and its position and mounting angle checked at your dealer.
- There are extreme temperature changes.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

On vehicles with RCTA, a red warning triangle with an arrow may also display on the RVC screen to warn of traffic coming from either direction, behind the vehicle. When an object is detected, three beeps sound on the left or right side, depending on the direction of the detected vehicle. This system detects objects coming from up to 20 m (65 ft) from the left or right side behind the vehicle. Use caution while backing up when towing a trailer, as the RCTA detection zones that extend out from the back of your vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed

Vehicle Personalization ⇨ 119.

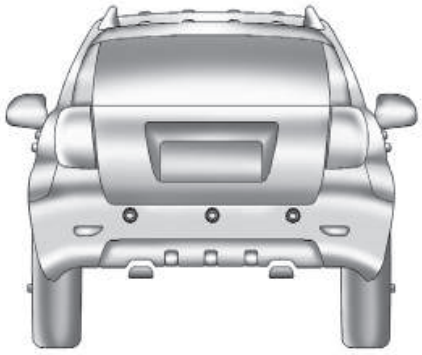
Ultrasonic Parking Assist

Rear parking assists system

The parking assistance system aids the driver during backward movement of the vehicle by chiming if any object is sensed behind the vehicle.

This system is turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON and the transmission is shifted to R (Reverse).

The chime sounds once when shifting to R (Reverse). This indicates a normal condition. If there are several chimes when shifting to reverse, there is a malfunction with the system and the warning light can come on. If this happens, consult your dealer to repair the problem as soon as possible.



You can figure out the distance between your vehicle and obstacles using the chime. The closer the vehicle is to an object the faster the chime will sound. If the distance is less than 30 - 40 cm, the signal will be continuous.

Front and rear parking assist system

The parking assistance system assists the driver during forward and backward movement of the vehicle by alarming if any object is sensed between the vehicle and the obstacle.

The system registers distance using sensors in each of the front and rear bumpers.

This system is automatically turned on whenever the ignition switch is ON.

Note

The front and rear sensors are activated together when shifting the gear to "R" position.

If the shifting lever is not in "R" position, only front sensor is activated.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If the vehicle approaches an obstacle to the front or rear, a series of signals sound. The interval between the signals becomes shorter as the distance is reduced.

The system is deactivated when the vehicle's speed is greater than 25 km/h (15 mph).



To activate the system, press the park assist button on the instrument panel. The indicator button will light up.

Pressing the button again deactivates the system and the indicator light turns off.

Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA)

If equipped, the Side Blind Zone Alert system is a lane-changing aid that assists drivers with avoiding crashes that occur with moving vehicles in the side blind zone (or spot) areas. The SBZA warning display will light up in the corresponding outside side mirror and will flash if the turn signal is on.

⚠ Warning

SBZA does not alert the driver to vehicles rapidly approaching outside of the side blind zones, pedestrians, bicyclists, or animals. It may not provide alerts when changing lanes under all driving conditions. Failure to use proper care when changing lanes may result in injury, death, or vehicle damage. Before making a lane change, always check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

SBZA Detection Zones



The SBZA sensor covers a zone of approximately one lane over from both sides of the vehicle, or 3.5 m (11 ft). The height of the zone is approximately between 0.5 m (1.5 ft) and 2 m (6 ft) off the ground. This zone starts at approximately the middle of the vehicle and goes back 5 m (16 ft).

How the System Works

The SBZA symbol lights up in the side mirrors when the system detects a moving vehicle in the next lane over that is in the side blind zone. This indicates it may be unsafe to change lanes. Before making a lane change, check the SBZA display, check mirrors, glance over your shoulder, and use the turn signals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Left Side Mirror Display



Right Side Mirror Display



When the vehicle is started, both outside mirror SBZA displays will briefly come on to indicate the system is operating. When the vehicle is in a forward gear, the left or right side mirror display will light up if a moving vehicle is detected in that blind zone. If the turn signal is activated in the same direction as a detected vehicle, this display will flash as an extra warning not to change lanes.

SBZA can be disabled through vehicle personalization. *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *119*. If SBZA is disabled by the driver, the SBZA mirror displays will not light up.

When the System Does Not Seem to Work Properly

SBZA displays may not come on when passing a vehicle quickly, for a stopped vehicle, or when towing a trailer. The SBZA detection zones that extend back from the side of the vehicle do not move further back when a trailer is towed. Use caution while changing lanes when towing a trailer. SBZA may alert to objects attached to the vehicle, such as a trailer, bicycle, or object extending out to either side of the vehicle. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not always alert the driver to vehicles in the side blind zone, especially in wet conditions. The system does not need to be serviced. The system may light up due to guardrails, signs, trees, shrubs, and other non-moving objects. This is normal system operation; the vehicle does not need service.

SBZA may not operate when the SBZA sensors in the left or right corners of the rear bumper are covered with mud, dirt, snow, ice, or slush, or in heavy rainstorms. For cleaning instructions, see "Washing the Vehicle". *Exterior Care* ⇨ *287*. If the DIC still displays the system unavailable message after cleaning both sides of the vehicle toward the rear corners of the vehicle, see your dealer.

If the SBZA displays do not light up when vehicles are in the blind zone and the system is clean, the system may need service. Take the vehicle to your dealer.

When SBZA is disabled for any reason other than the driver turning it off, the Side Blind Zone Alert On option will not be available on the personalization menu. *Vehicle Personalization* ⇨ *119*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) System

If equipped, the RCTA system uses a triangle with an arrow displayed on the RVC screen to warn of traffic behind your vehicle that may cross your vehicle's path while in R (Reverse). In addition, beeps will sound.

Rear Vision Camera (RVC) ⇨ *209*.

Fuel

Use the recommended fuel for proper vehicle maintenance.

Caution

An advice to motorist that correct use and regular maintenance of the vehicle and driving behavior, such as avoiding aggressive driving, travelling at lower speeds, correctly inflating tires, reducing periods of idling, not carrying excessive weight, will improve the fuel consumption and reduce the CO2 emissions of their vehicles.

Recommended Fuel

Gasoline Engine

Use regular unleaded gasoline with a posted octane rating of 95 RON or higher. If the octane rating is less than 95 RON, an audible knocking noise may be heard. If this occurs, use a gasoline rated at 95 RON or higher as soon as possible. If heavy knocking is heard when using gasoline rated at 95 RON or higher, the engine needs service.

Use of Seasonal Fuels

Use summer and winter fuels in the appropriate season. Driving or starting could be affected if the incorrect fuel is used. Drive the vehicle with the engine running until the fuel is a half tank or less, then refuel with the current seasonal fuel.

Prohibited Fuels

Gasolines containing oxygenates, such as ethers and ethanol, as well as reformulated gasolines are available in some cities. If these gasolines comply with the previously described specification, then they are acceptable to use. However, E85 (85% ethanol) and other fuels containing more than 15% ethanol must be used only in flex fuel vehicles.

Caution

Do not use fuel containing methanol. It can corrode metal parts in the fuel system and also damage plastic and rubber parts. That damage would not be covered under the vehicle warranty.

Some gasolines that are not reformulated for low emissions can contain an octane-enhancing additive called methylcyclopentadienyl manganese tricarbonyl (MMT). Do not use gasolines with MMT as they can reduce spark plug life and affect emission control system performance. The malfunction indicator lamp may turn on. If this occurs, see your dealer for service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuel for Diesel Engines

Only use diesel fuel that complies with SANS 342.

GM recommends the use of Low Sulphur Diesel (50 ppm or less). Standard Grade Diesel (500 ppm) should only be used if Low Sulphur Diesel is not available.

Note: the use of Low Sulphur Diesel (50 ppm or less) has an environmental benefit as it improves vehicle emissions and it also has a vehicle benefit as it improves the long term durability of the engine.

Caution

Use of fuel that does not comply to SANS 342 can lead to engine power loss, increased wear or engine damage and may affect your warranty.

Do not use marine diesel oils, heating oils or diesel-water emulsions. Diesel fuels must not be diluted with fuels for petrol engines.

The flow and filterability of diesel fuel are temperature-dependent.

Diesel fuels with improves low-temperature properties are therefore available on the market during the winter months. Make sure that you fill the tank with winter fuel before the start of the cold weather season.

⚠ Warning

Do not use Diesel fuel with a BioDiesel content greater than 5% in this vehicle.

Fuel Additives

Gasoline should contain detergent additives that help prevent engine and fuel system deposits from forming. Clean fuel injectors and intake valves will allow the emission control system to work properly. Some gasoline does not contain sufficient quantities of additives to keep fuel injectors and intake valves clean. To make up for this lack of detergency, consult your dealer for the GM approved additive treatment. Add this additive to the fuel tank at every engine oil change or every 15 000 km (9,000 mi), whichever occurs first.

Filling the Tank

⚠ Warning

Fuel vapors and fuel fires burn violently and can cause injury or death.

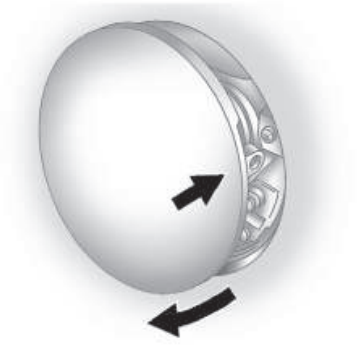
- To help avoid injuries to you and others, read and follow all the instructions on the fuel pump island.
- Turn off the engine when refueling.
- Keep sparks, flames, and smoking materials away from fuel.
- Do not leave the fuel pump unattended.
- Do not use a cell phone while refueling.
- Do not re-enter the vehicle while pumping fuel.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

- Keep children away from the fuel pump and never let children pump fuel.
- Fuel can spray out if the fuel cap is opened too quickly. This spray can happen if the tank is nearly full, and is more likely in hot weather. Open the fuel cap slowly and wait for any hiss noise to stop, then unscrew the cap all the way.



The fuel cap is behind a hinged fuel door on the driver side of the vehicle. If equipped, the fuel door is locked when the vehicle doors are locked. Press on the RKE transmitter to unlock. To open the fuel door, push and release the rearward center edge of the door.

To remove the fuel cap, turn it slowly counterclockwise. The fuel cap has a spring in it; if the cap is released too soon, it will spring back to the right. To avoid fuel contact on the painted surface of the vehicle when filling the fuel tank, place the tethered cap on the fuel filler door.

Be careful not to spill fuel. Do not top off or overfill the tank and wait a few seconds after you have finished pumping before removing the nozzle. Clean fuel from painted surfaces as soon as possible. *Exterior Care* ⇨ *287*.

When replacing the fuel cap, turn it clockwise until it clicks. Make sure the cap is fully installed. The diagnostic system can determine if the fuel cap has been left off or improperly installed. This would allow fuel to evaporate into the atmosphere. *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *104*.

⚠ Warning

If a fire starts while you are refueling, do not remove the nozzle. Shut off the flow of fuel by shutting off the pump or by notifying the station attendant. Leave the area immediately.

Caution

If a new fuel cap is needed, be sure to get the right type of cap from your dealer. The wrong type of fuel cap may not fit properly, may cause the malfunction indicator lamp to light, and could damage the fuel tank and emissions system. *Malfunction Indicator Lamp* ⇨ *104*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Filling a Portable Fuel Container

⚠ Warning

Never fill a portable fuel container while it is in the vehicle. Static electricity discharge from the container can ignite the fuel vapor. You can be badly burned and the vehicle damaged if this occurs. To help avoid injury to you and others:

- Dispense fuel only into approved containers.
- Do not fill a container while it is inside a vehicle, in a vehicle's trunk, pickup bed, or on any surface other than the ground.
- Bring the fill nozzle in contact with the inside of the fill opening before operating the nozzle. Contact should be maintained until the filling is complete.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

- Do not smoke while pumping fuel.
- Do not use a cellular phone while pumping fuel.

Trailer Towing

General Towing Information

Only use towing equipment that has been designed for the vehicle. Contact your dealer or trailering dealer for assistance with preparing the vehicle for towing a trailer.

See the following trailer towing information in this section:

- For information on driving while towing a trailer, see “Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips.”
- For maximum vehicle and trailer weights, see “Trailer Towing.”
- For information on equipment to tow a trailer, see “Towing Equipment.”

For information on towing a disabled vehicle, *Towing the Vehicle* ⇨ *284*. For information on towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as a motor home, *Recreational Vehicle Towing* ⇨ *284*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving Characteristics and Towing Tips

⚠ Warning

The driver can lose control when pulling a trailer if the correct equipment is not used or the vehicle is not driven properly. For example, if the trailer is too heavy, the brakes may not work well — or even at all. The driver and passengers could be seriously injured. The vehicle may also be damaged; the resulting repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Pull a trailer only if all the steps in this section have been followed. Ask your dealer for advice and information about towing a trailer with the vehicle.

The vehicle can tow a trailer if it is equipped with the proper trailer towing equipment. To identify the trailering capacity of the vehicle, *Trailer Towing* ⇨ *221*. Trailering changes handling, acceleration, braking, durability, and fuel economy. With the added weight, the engine, transmission, wheel assemblies, and tires are forced to work harder and under greater loads. The trailer also adds wind resistance, increasing the pulling requirements. For safe trailering, correctly use the proper trailering equipment.

The following information has important trailering tips and rules for your safety and that of your passengers. Read this section carefully before pulling a trailer.

Pulling a Trailer

Here are some important points:

- There are many laws, including speed limit restrictions that apply to trailering. Check for legal requirements.
- Do not tow a trailer at all during the first 1 600 km (1,000 miles) the new vehicle is driven. The engine, axle, or other parts could be damaged.
- During the first 800 km (500 miles) that a trailer is towed, do not drive over 80 km/h (50 mph) and do not make starts at full throttle. This reduces wear on the vehicle.
- Vehicles with automatic transmissions can tow in D (Drive) but M (Manual Mode) is recommended. *Manual Mode* ⇨ *198*. Use a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often. For vehicles with a manual transmission, it is better not to use the highest gear.
- Use the cruise control when towing.
- Turn off the fuel economy mode (ECO) when towing.
- Obey speed limit restrictions. Do not drive faster than the maximum posted speed for trailers, or no more than 90 km/h (55 mph), to reduce wear on the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Driving with a Trailer

Towing a trailer requires experience. Get familiar with handling and braking with the added trailer weight. The vehicle is now longer and not as responsive as the vehicle is by itself.

Check all trailer hitch parts and attachments, safety chains, electrical connectors, lamps, tires, and mirror adjustments. If the trailer has electric brakes, start the vehicle and trailer moving and then apply the trailer brake controller by hand to be sure the brakes are working.

During the trip, check regularly to be sure that the load is secure, and the lamps and trailer brakes are working properly.

Towing with a Stability Control System

When towing, the sound of the stability control system might be heard. The system is reacting to the vehicle movement caused by the trailer, which mainly occurs during cornering. This is normal when towing heavier trailers.

Following Distance

Stay at least twice as far behind the vehicle ahead as you would when driving the vehicle without a trailer. This can help to avoid situations that require heavy braking and sudden turns.

Passing

More passing distance is needed when towing a trailer. Because the rig is longer, it is necessary to go much farther beyond the passed vehicle before returning to the lane.

Backing Up

Hold the bottom of the steering wheel with one hand. Then, to move the trailer to the left, move that hand to the left. To move the trailer to the right, move your hand to the right. Always back up slowly and, if possible, have someone guide you.

Making Turns

Caution
Making very sharp turns while trailering could cause the trailer to come in contact with the vehicle. The vehicle could be damaged. Avoid making very sharp turns while trailering.

When turning with a trailer, make wider turns than normal. Do this so the trailer won't strike soft shoulders, curbs, road signs, trees or other objects. Avoid jerky or sudden maneuvers. Signal well in advance.

Turn Signals When Towing a Trailer

The arrows on the instrument panel flash whenever signaling a turn or lane change. Properly hooked up, the trailer lamps also flash, telling other drivers the vehicle is turning, changing lanes, or stopping.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When towing a trailer, the arrows on the instrument panel flash for turns even if the bulbs on the trailer are burned out. For this reason you may think other drivers are seeing the signal when they are not. It is important to check occasionally to be sure the trailer bulbs are still working.

Driving on Grades

Reduce speed and shift to a lower gear before starting down a long or steep downgrade. If the transmission is not shifted down, the brakes might have to be used so much that they would get hot and no longer work well.

Vehicles with an automatic transmission can tow in D (Drive) but M (Manual Mode) is recommended. Shift the transmission to a lower gear if the transmission shifts too often under heavy loads and/or hilly conditions. For vehicles with a manual transmission, it is better not to use the highest gear.

When towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, consider the following: Engine coolant will boil at a lower temperature than at normal altitudes. If the engine is turned off immediately after towing at high altitude on steep uphill grades, the vehicle may show signs similar to engine overheating. To avoid this, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the automatic transmission in P (Park) for a few minutes before turning the engine off. For vehicles with manual transmissions, let the engine run while parked, preferably on level ground, with the transmission out of gear and the parking brake applied, for a few minutes before turning the engine off. If the overheat warning comes on, *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *242*.

Parking on Hills

⚠ Warning

Parking the vehicle on a hill with the trailer attached can be dangerous. If something goes wrong, the rig could start to move. People can be injured, and both the vehicle and the trailer can be damaged. When possible, always park the rig on a flat surface.

If parking the rig on a hill:

1. Press the brake pedal, but do not shift into P (Park) yet for vehicles with an automatic transmission, or into gear for vehicles with a manual transmission. Turn the wheels into the curb if facing downhill or into traffic if facing uphill.
2. Have someone place chocks under the trailer wheels.
3. When the wheel chocks are in place, release the brake pedal until the chocks absorb the load.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

4. Reapply the brake pedal. Then apply the parking brake and shift into P (Park) for vehicles with an automatic transmission or into gear for vehicles with a manual transmission.
5. Release the brake pedal.

Leaving After Parking on a Hill

1. Apply and hold the brake pedal while you:
   - Start the engine.
   - Shift into a gear.
   - Release the parking brake.
2. Let up on the brake pedal.
3. Drive slowly until the trailer is clear of the chocks.
4. Stop and have someone pick up and store the chocks.

Maintenance When Trailer Towing

The vehicle needs service more often when pulling a trailer. See the Maintenance Schedule booklet for more information. Things that are especially important in trailer operation are automatic transmission fluid, engine oil, axle lubricant, belts, cooling system, and brake system. It is a good idea to inspect these before and during the trip.

Check periodically to see that all hitch nuts and bolts are tight.

Engine Cooling When Trailer Towing

The cooling system may temporarily overheat during severe operating conditions. *Engine Overheating* ⇨ *242*.

Trailer Towing

Before pulling a trailer, there are three important considerations that have to do with weight:

- The weight of the trailer
- The weight of the trailer tongue
- The total weight on the vehicle's tires

Weight of the Trailer

How heavy can a trailer safely be? It depends on how the rig is used. For example, speed, altitude, road grades, outside temperature and how much the vehicle is used to pull a trailer are all important. It can depend on any special equipment on the vehicle, and the amount of tongue weight the vehicle can carry. See “Weight of the Trailer Tongue” later in this section for more information.

Maximum trailer weight is calculated assuming only the driver is in the tow vehicle and it has all the required trailering equipment. The weight of additional optional equipment, passengers and cargo in the tow vehicle must be subtracted from the maximum trailer weight.

Use the following chart to determine how much the vehicle can weigh, based upon the vehicle model and options.

*The Gross Combination Weight Rating (GCWR) is the total allowable weight of the completely loaded vehicle and trailer including

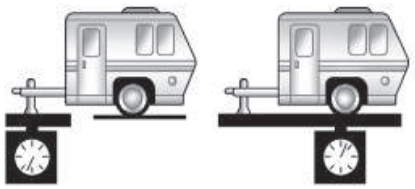
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

any passengers, cargo, equipment and conversions. The GCWR for the vehicle should not be exceeded.

Ask your dealer for our trailering information or advice.

Weight of the Trailer Tongue

The tongue load (A) of any trailer is an important weight to measure because it affects the total gross weight of the vehicle. The Gross Vehicle Weight (GVW) includes the curb weight of the vehicle, any cargo carried in it, and the people who will be riding in the vehicle. If there are a lot of options, equipment, passengers or cargo in the vehicle, it will reduce the tongue weight the vehicle can carry, which will also reduce the trailer weight the vehicle can tow. If towing a trailer, the tongue load must be added to the GVW because the vehicle will be carrying that weight, too. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182* for more information about the vehicle's maximum load capacity.



If a weight-carrying hitch or a weight-distributing hitch is being used, the trailer tongue (A) should weigh 10-15 percent of the total loaded trailer weight (B).

After loading the trailer, weigh the trailer and then the tongue, separately, to see if the weights are proper. If they are not, adjustments might be made by moving some items around in the trailer.

Trailering may be limited by the vehicle's ability to carry tongue weight. Tongue weight cannot cause the vehicle to exceed the GVWR (Gross Vehicle Weight Rating) or the RGAWR (Rear Gross Axle Weight Rating). The effect of additional weight may reduce the trailering capacity more than the total of the additional weight.

It is important that the vehicle does not exceed any of its ratings — GCWR, GVWR, RGAWR, Maximum Trailer Rating or Tongue Weight. The only way to be sure it is not exceeding any of these ratings is to weigh the vehicle and trailer.

Total Weight on the Vehicle's Tires

Be sure the vehicle's tires are inflated to the upper limit for cold tires. These numbers can be found on the Certification label or *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*. Make sure not to go over the GVW limit for the vehicle, or the GAWR, including the weight of the trailer tongue. If using a weight distributing hitch, make sure not to go over the rear axle limit before applying the weight distribution spring bars.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Towing Equipment

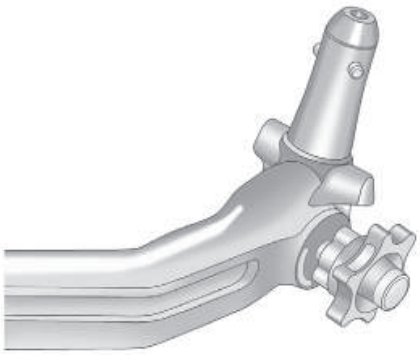
Hitches

It is important to have the correct hitch equipment. Crosswinds, large trucks going by and rough roads are a few reasons why the right hitch is needed.

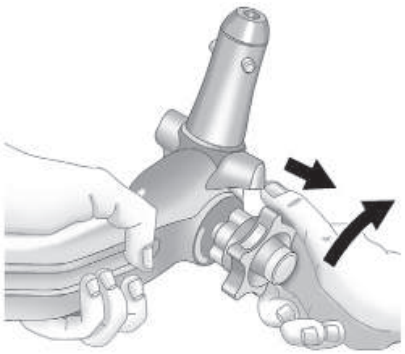
- The rear bumper on the vehicle is not intended for hitches. Do not attach rental hitches or other bumper-type hitches to it. Use only a frame-mounted hitch that does not attach to the bumper.
- Will any holes be made in the body of the vehicle when the trailer hitch is installed? If there are, then be sure to seal the holes later when the hitch is removed. If the holes are not sealed, dirt, water, and deadly carbon monoxide (CO) from the exhaust can get into the vehicle. *Engine Exhaust* ⇨ *194*.

Installing the Hitch

1. Remove the hitch cover and store in a safe place.

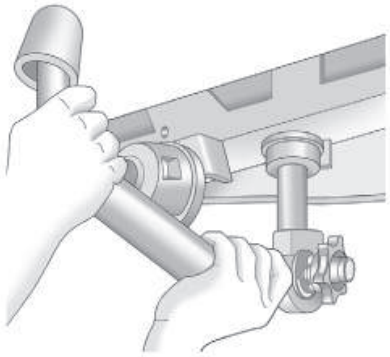


2. Make sure the hitch is ready to be installed.
   - The red marking on the knob points towards the green mark on the hitch.
   - There is a gap of 6 mm (0.24 in) between the knob and the hitch.
   - The key is in the lock.

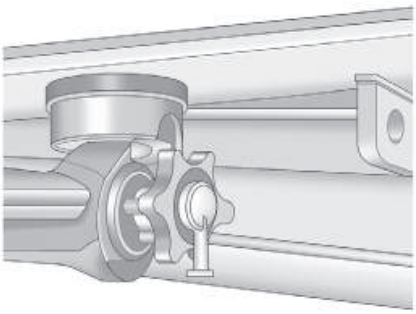


3. If the hitch is not ready to be installed, the tension must be set by pulling the knob out and turning it clockwise as far as it will go.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



4. Insert the hitch into the housing and push up firmly until you hear the knob snap into place against the hitch.

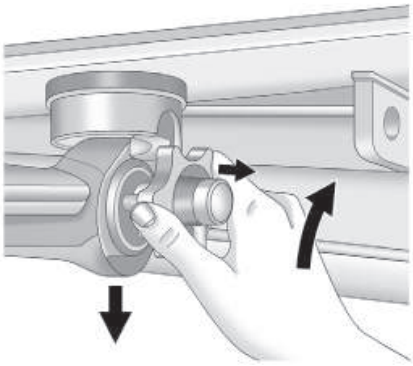


5. Remove the key and install the protective cover.

Check that the hitch is correctly installed:

- The red marking on the knob points toward the white marking on the hitch.
- There is no gap between the knob and the hitch.
- The hitch is seated firmly in the housing.
- The hitch must be locked and the key removed.

Removing the Hitch



1. Pull the knob out and turn it clockwise as far as it will go.
2. Pull the hitch downward out of the coupling housing and store it in a safe place.
3. Insert the plug in the housing.

Safety Chains

Always attach chains between the vehicle and the trailer. Cross the safety chains under the tongue of the trailer to help prevent the tongue from contacting the road if it becomes separated from the hitch. Always leave just enough slack so the rig can turn. Never allow safety chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer Brakes

A loaded trailer that weighs more than 450 kg (1,000 lbs) needs to have its own brake system that is adequate for the weight of the trailer. Be sure to read and follow the instructions for the trailer brakes so they are installed, adjusted, and maintained properly.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Because the vehicle has antilock brakes, do not tap into the vehicle's brake system. If you do, both brake systems will not work well, or at all.

Trailer Wiring Harness

All of the electrical circuits required for the trailer lighting system can be accessed at the driver side rear lamp connector. This connector is located under the carpet at the rear corner of the cargo compartment.

Trailer Sway Control (TSC)

The vehicle has a Trailer Sway Control (TSC) feature as part of the Electronic Stability Control (ESC) system. If while towing, the system detects that the trailer is swaying, the vehicle's brakes are applied without the driver pressing the brake pedal.



When TSC is applying the brakes, the ESC indicator light flashes to notify the driver to reduce speed. *Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control* ⇨ *204*. If the trailer continues to sway, ESC will reduce engine torque to help slow the vehicle.

TSC will not function if ESC is turned off.

Conversions and Add-Ons

Add-On Electrical Equipment

Caution
Some electrical equipment can damage the vehicle or cause components to not work and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always check with your dealer before adding electrical equipment.

Add-on equipment can drain the vehicle's 12-volt battery, even if the vehicle is not operating.

The vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to add anything electrical to the vehicle, *Servicing the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *70*, *Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle* ⇨ *70*.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Care

General Information
General Information 227
Accessories and Modifications 227

Vehicle Checks
Doing Your Own Service Work 227
Hood 228
Engine Compartment Overview 229
Engine Oil 235
Engine Oil Life System 238
Automatic Transmission Fluid 239
Manual Transmission Fluid . . . 240
Engine Air Cleaner/Filter 240
Engine Coolant 240
Engine Overheating 242
Power Steering Fluid 243
Washer Fluid 244
Brake Fluid 244
Battery 245
Diesel Fuel Filter 247
Wiper Blade Replacement 247

Headlamp Aiming
Headlamp Aiming 248

Bulb Replacement
Bulb Replacement 249
Halogen Bulbs 249
Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps 249
Fog Lamps 250
Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps 251
Side Turn Signal Lamps 252
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL) 252
License Plate Lamp 252
Replacement Bulbs 252

Electrical System
Electrical System Overload . . . 253
Fuses and Circuit Breakers . . . 253
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 254
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 258

Wheels and Tires
Tires 260
Winter Tires 260
Tire Designations 260
Tire Pressure 261
Tire Pressure Monitor System 262
Tire Pressure Monitor Operation 263
Tread Depth 263
Tire Rotation 263
Buying New Tires 264
Different Size Tires and Wheels 265
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 265
Tire Chains 266
If a Tire Goes Flat 266
Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 268
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 274
Tire Changing 274
Compact Spare Tire 280
Full-Size Spare Tire 280

Jump Starting
Jump Starting 281

Towing the Vehicle
Towing the Vehicle 284
Recreational Vehicle Towing 284

Appearance Care
Exterior Care 287
Interior Care 291
Floor Mats 294

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

General Information

For service and parts needs, visit your dealer. You will receive genuine parts and trained and supported service people.

Accessories and Modifications

Adding non-dealer accessories or making modifications to the vehicle can affect vehicle performance and safety, including such things as airbags, braking, stability, ride and handling, emissions systems, aerodynamics, durability, and electronic systems like antilock brakes, traction control, and stability control. These accessories or modifications could even cause malfunction or damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

Damage to suspension components caused by modifying vehicle height outside of factory settings will not be covered by the warranty.

Damage to vehicle components resulting from modifications or the installation or use of non-GM certified parts, including control module or software modifications, is not covered under the terms of the vehicle warranty and may affect remaining warranty coverage for affected parts.

GM Accessories are designed to complement and function with other systems on the vehicle. See your dealer to accessorize the vehicle using genuine GM Accessories installed by a dealer technician.

Adding Equipment to the Airbag-Equipped Vehicle ⇨ *70*.

Vehicle Checks

Doing Your Own Service Work

⚠ Warning

It can be dangerous to work on your vehicle if you do not have the proper knowledge, service manual, tools, or parts. Always follow owner manual procedures and consult the service manual for your vehicle before doing any service work.

If doing some of your own service work, use the proper service manual. It tells you much more about how to service the vehicle than this manual can.

This vehicle has an airbag system. Before attempting to do your own service work, *Airbag System Check* ⇨ *71*.

Keep a record with all parts receipts and list the mileage and the date of any service work performed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

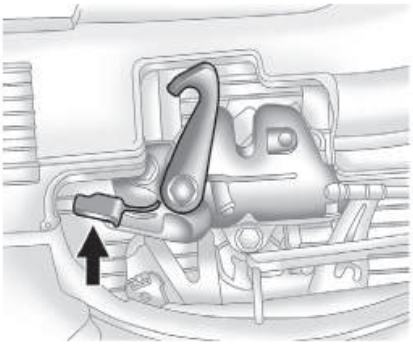
Even small amounts of contamination can cause damage to vehicle systems. Do not allow contaminants to contact the fluids, reservoir caps, or dipsticks.

Hood

To open the hood:



1. Pull the handle with this symbol on it. It is located under the instrument panel on the driver side of the vehicle.



2. Go to the front of the vehicle and lift up on the secondary hood release lever.
3. Lift the hood.

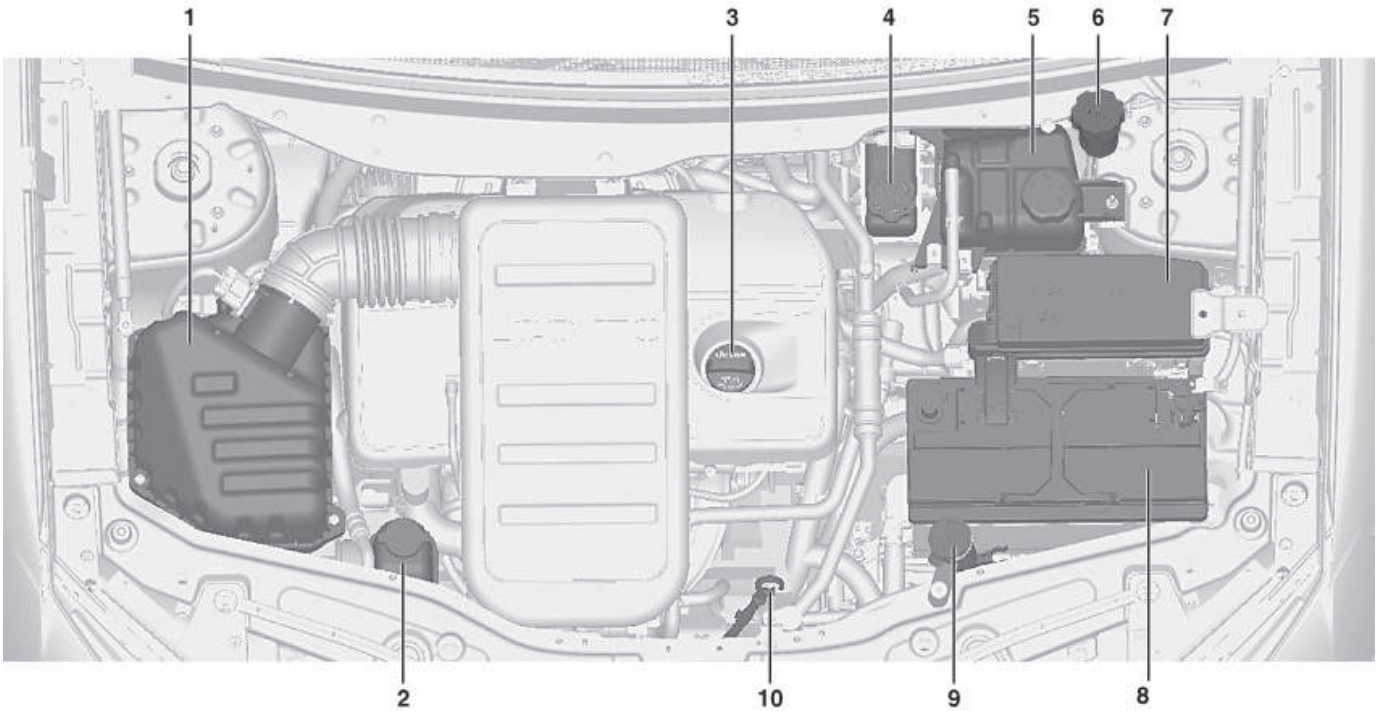
To close the hood:

1. Before closing the hood, be sure all the filler caps are properly installed.
2. Lower the hood 20 cm (8 in) above the vehicle and release it so it fully latches.
3. Check to make sure the hood is firmly closed. Repeat the process if necessary.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

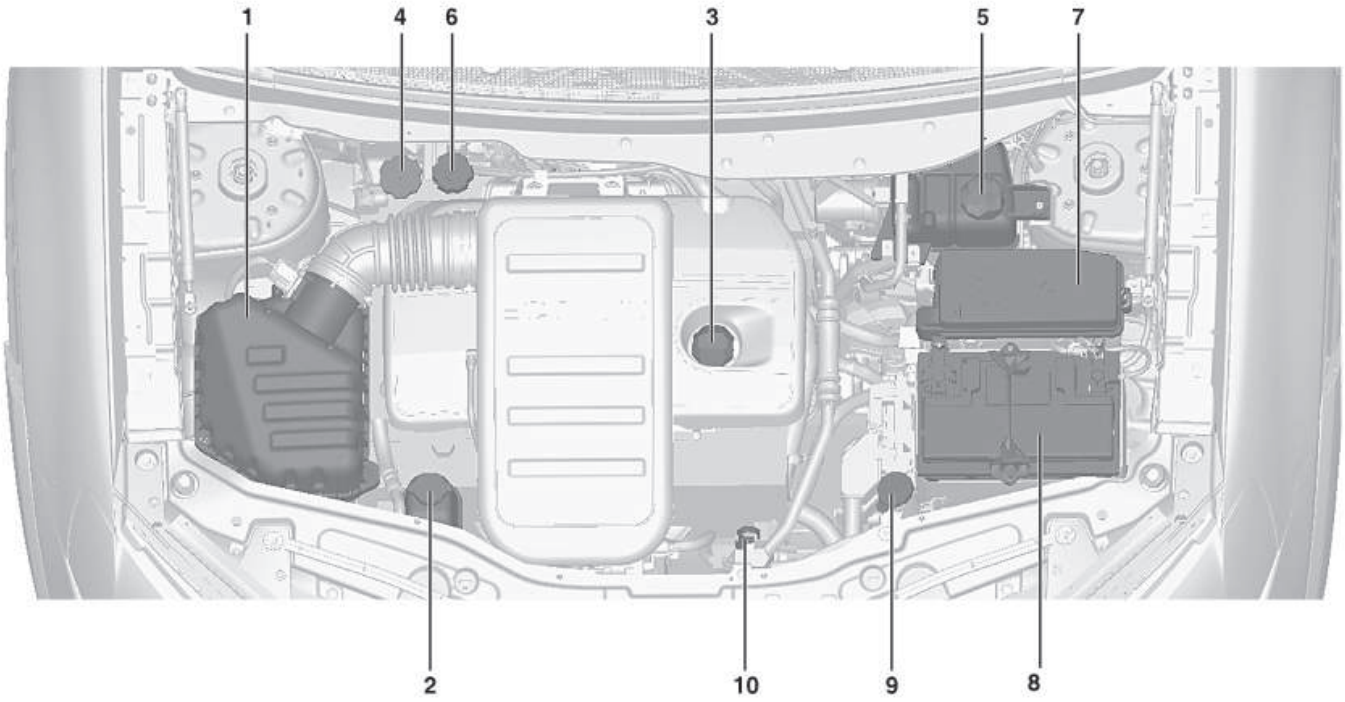
Engine Compartment Overview

2.4 DOHC - LHD



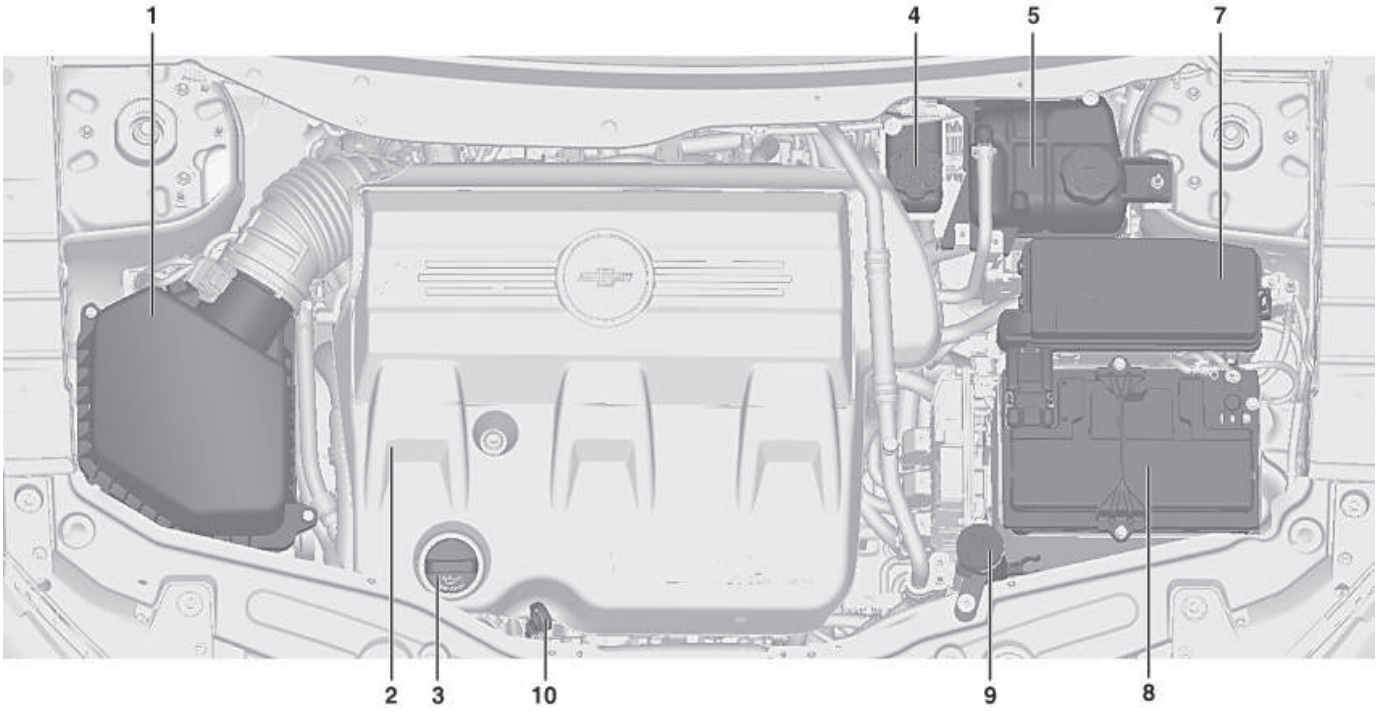
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

2.4 DOHC - RHD



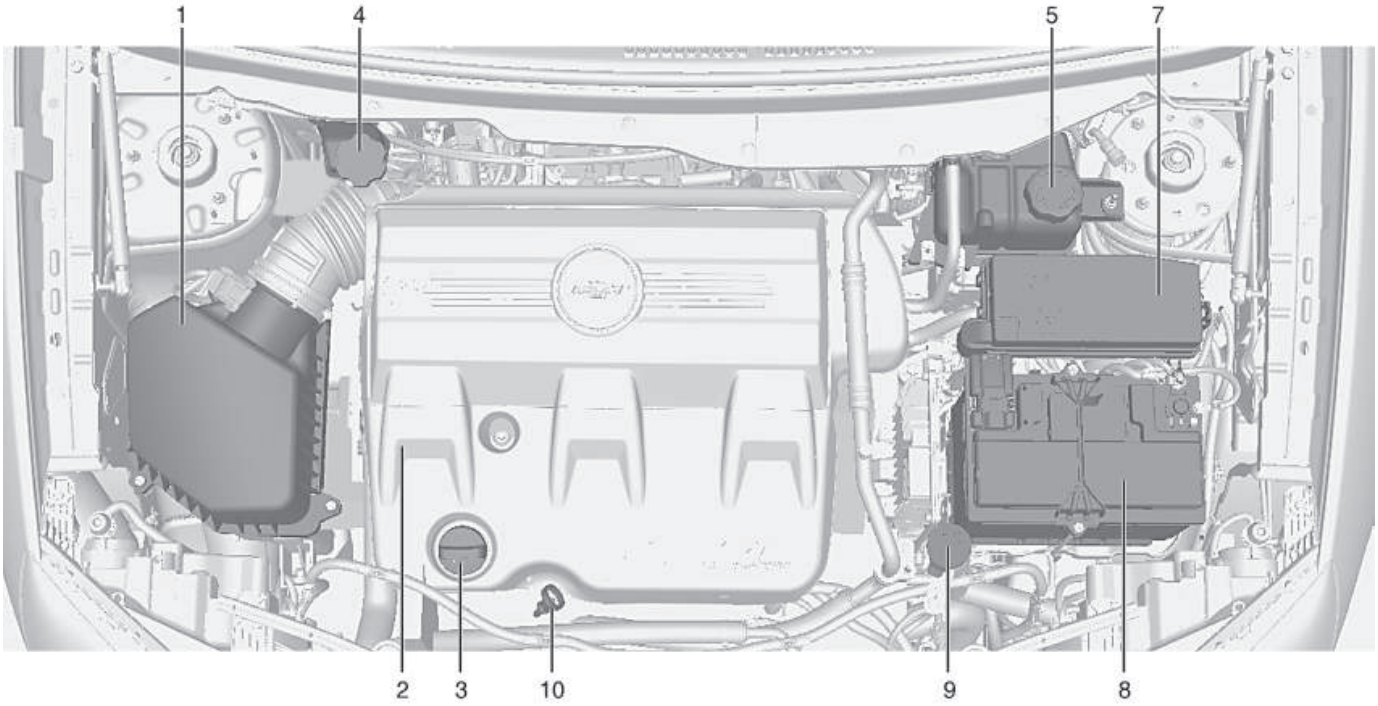
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3.0 DOHC - LHD



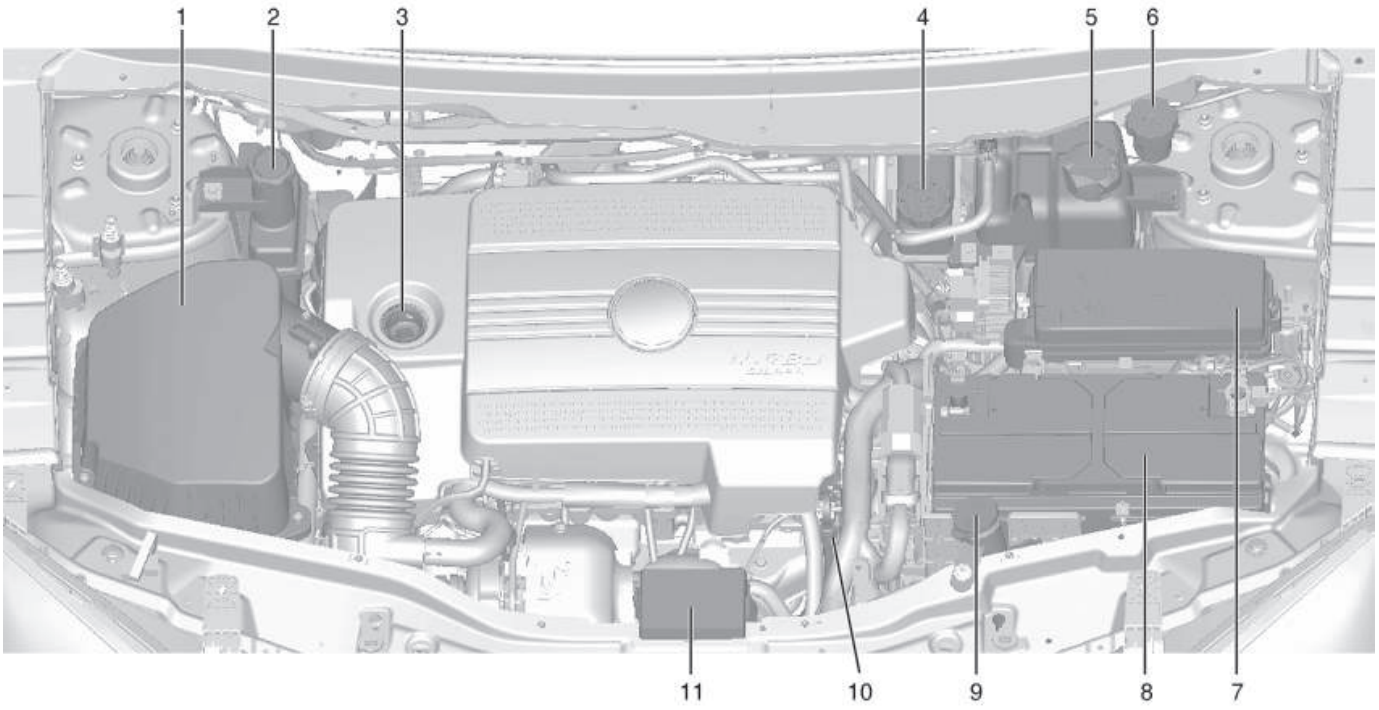
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3.0 DOHC -RHD



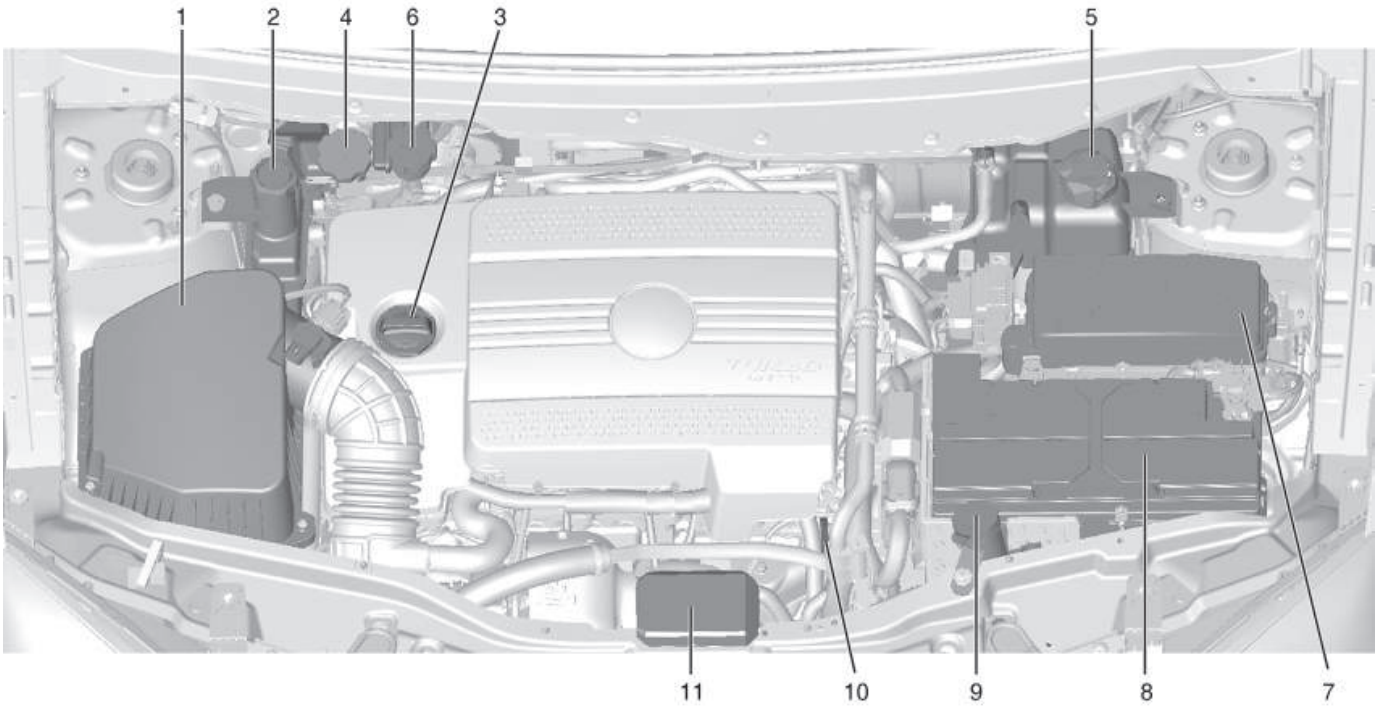
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIESEL - LHD



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

DIESEL - RHD



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

1. Engine air filter
2. Power steering fluid container
3. Engine oil cap
4. Brake fluid container
5. Engine coolant container
6. Clutch fluid reservoir
7. Fuse block
8. Battery
9. Washer fluid container
10. Dipstick for engine oil level
11. Auxiliary fuse block

Engine Oil

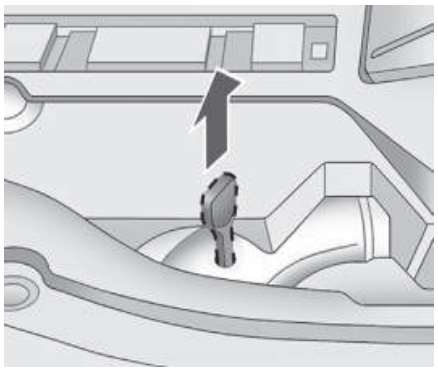
Keep your engine properly lubricated by keeping the engine oil at the correct level.

It is normal for an engine to consume some engine oil.

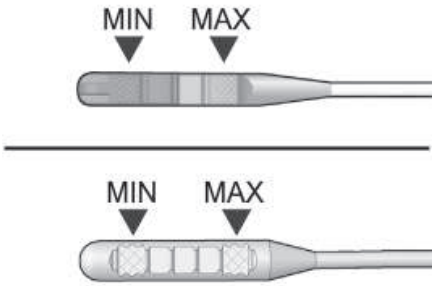
Check the oil level at regular intervals such as every time you stop for fuel.

In order to get an accurate reading, the oil must be warm and the vehicle must be on level ground.

Checking engine oil leve



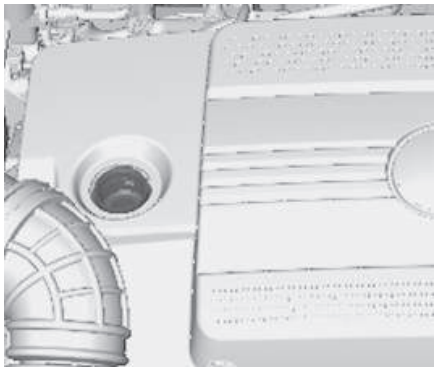
1. Park vehicle on level ground.
2. Turn off the engine and give the oil 5 minutes to drain back into the oil pan. If this is not done, the oil dipstick might not show the actual level.
3. Pull out the dipstick and wipe it clean.
4. Re-insert dipstick completely.
5. Pull the dipstick out again.



6. Check oil level, as shown on the dipstick. Oil should be between MIN and MAX .

   If oil level is not clear, read the opposite side of gauge instead. Different dipsticks are used depending on engine variant.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. If the oil level is below MIN, add enough oil of the same grade as is currently in the engine to raise the oil level to MAX. Do not fill over MAX mark.

⚠ Warning

Engine oil is an irritant and, if ingested, can cause illness or death.

Keep out of reach of children.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with skin.

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

Wash exposed areas with soap and water or hand cleaner.

⚠ Warning

Adding too much oil can affect engine operation.

Do not allow oil to go above MAX mark on dipstick.

Overfilling reservoir can damage your vehicle by:

Increasing oil consumption.

Fouling spark plugs.

Building excessive carbon deposits in the engine.

Changing engine oil and filter

⚠ Warning

Before attempting to do the work, be sure you are fully acquainted with doing this job.

Have a repairer do this work if you are not confident of completing the task safely. We recommend an authorised repairer.

Otherwise, you could be injured or damage the vehicle.

Engine oil looses its ability to lubricate when contaminated. Be sure to change your engine oil according to maintenance schedule.

Be sure to replace the engine oil filter each time you change engine oil.

Under severe conditions, change oil and oil filter more frequently than is recommended in the standard maintenance schedule.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Severe conditions include, but are not limited to:

- Frequent cold starts.
- Considerable travel in stop-and-go traffic.
- Frequent short trips.
- Frequent driving when outside temperature remains below freezing.
- Prolonged idling.
- Frequent low-speed driving.
- Driving in dusty areas.

⚠ Warning

Engine oil and its containers can be hazardous to your health.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with engine oil.

Clean your skin and nails with soap and water, or hand cleaner after handling engine oil. Also

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

keep this and other toxic materials out of the reach of children.

Engine oil can irritate the skin and can cause illness and even death if swallowed.

Caution

Use of unauthorised or low quality engine oil or chemical engine treatments (additives) can damage the engine.

Consult a repairer before attempting to use additives. We recommend that you consult an authorised repairer.

Caution

Do not dispose of used engine oil and filter with your household waste.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

See your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used engine oil and filter contain harmful elements that may be unhealthy to you and threat to the environment.

Selecting the right engine oil

Use and ask for engine oils with the dexos certification mark. Oils meeting the requirements of the vehicle should have the dexos certification mark on the container.

This certification mark indicates that the oil has been approved to the dexos specification.



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



This vehicle was filled at the factory with dexos-approved engine oil.

Caution

Use only engine oil that is approved to the dexos specification or an equivalent engine oil of the appropriate viscosity grade. Engine oils approved to the dexos specification will show the dexos symbol on the container. Failure to use the recommended engine oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty. If you are unsure whether the oil is approved to the dexos specification, ask your service provider.

SAE 5W-30 is the best viscosity grade for the vehicle. SAE 0W-30, 0W-40, or 5W-40 can also be used. Do not use other viscosity oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40, or 20W-50.

In an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -29°C (-20°F), an SAE 0W-30 oil should be used. An oil of this viscosity grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures. When selecting an oil of the appropriate viscosity grade, be sure to always select oil that meets the required specification.

Engine Oil Life System

This vehicle has a computer system that indicates when to change the engine oil and filter. This is based on engine revolutions, engine temperature and mileage. Based on driving conditions, the mileage at which an oil change is indicated can vary considerably. For the oil life system to work properly, the system must be reset every time the oil is changed.

When the system has calculated that oil life has been diminished, it indicates that an oil change is necessary. A change engine oil lamp displays. Change the oil as soon as possible within the next 1,000 km (600 miles). It is possible that, if driving under the best conditions, the oil life system might indicate that an oil change is not necessary for up to a year. The engine oil and filter must be changed at least once a year and, at this time, the system must be reset. Your dealer has trained service people who will perform this work and reset the system. It is also important to check the oil regularly over the course of an oil drain interval and keep it at the proper level.

If the system is ever reset accidentally, the oil must be changed at 5,000 km (3,000 miles) since the last oil change.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

After you change the oil, the oil life monitor will need to be reset. See an authorised repairer for service.

How to Reset the Engine Oil Life System

The engine oil life system calculates when to change your engine oil and filter based on vehicle use. Anytime your oil is changed, reset the system so it can calculate when the next oil change is required.

To reset the engine oil life system, do one of the following:

- Using the scan tool. Your authorised repairer will reset the system using scan tool after changing the engine oil. Consult a repairer.
- Using accelerator pedal

Petrol engine

1. Turn the ignition key to ON/ START with the engine off.
2. Fully press and release the accelerator pedal three times within five seconds.
3. Turn the key to LOCK.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Diesel engine

1. Remove key from ignition switch for more than one minute. Then turn on ignition key (do not start engine).
2. Perform the following procedure:
   2.1. Press the accelerator pedal to the floor and hold it on the floor for 2 seconds.
   2.2. Release the accelerator pedal and take your foot off of the pedal for 2 seconds.
   2.3. Repeat this sequence (1, 2) two more times (for a total of three times) within one minute.

If the change engine oil lamp comes back on and stays on when you start your vehicle, the engine oil life system has not reset. Repeat the procedure.

Caution
Remember to reset the engine oil life system whenever the engine oil is changed.

Recommended engine oil and maintenance schedule

Recommended engine oil

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ⇨ 301.

Maintenance schedule

Scheduled Maintenance ⇨ 296.

Automatic Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the automatic transmission fluid level.

If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a repairer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Note
Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

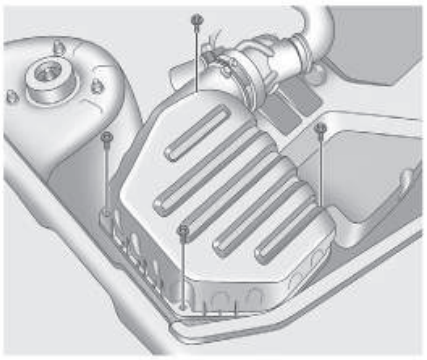
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ⇨ 301.

Manual Transmission Fluid

It is not necessary to check the manual transmission fluid level. If you have a problem e.g. leak, have it remedied by a repairer.

Note
Use of the incorrect fluid may damage the vehicle. Always use the fluid listed in Recommended Fluids and Lubricants.

Engine Air Cleaner/Filter



1. Shake the air cleaner element to remove surface dust.
2. Clean the inside of the air cleaner housing.
3. Cover the open filter housing with a damp cloth while cleaning the element.
4. Clean air filter element by blowing compressed air through it in the direction opposite normal airflow.

Caution
The engine needs clean air to operate properly. Do not operate your vehicle without the air cleaner element installed. Driving without the air cleaner element properly installed can damage your engine.

Engine Coolant

In countries with moderate climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -30 °C.

In countries with extremely cold climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -40 °C.

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

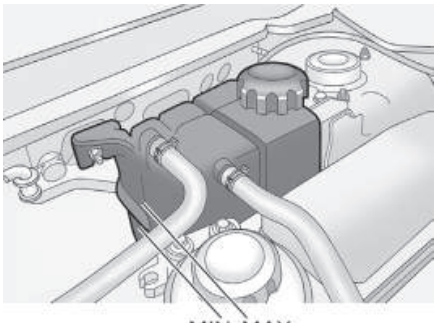
Caution
Only use approved anti-freeze.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Coolant level

Caution

Too low a coolant level can cause engine damage.



When the engine is cool, the coolant level should be between the MIN and MAX mark on the coolant reservoir. The level of coolant rises as the engine warms and drops back as the engine cools.

⚠ Warning

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when the engine and radiator are hot. It could cause serious injury. The engine must be cool before opening the cap. Carefully open the cap, relieving the pressure slowly.

Fill up with a mixture of demineralised water and anti-freeze approved for the vehicle. Install the cap tightly. Have the anti-freeze concentration checked and have the cause of the coolant loss remedied by a repairer.

Note

If the coolant level falls below the MIN mark, refill the radiator with 56:44 mix of de-mineralised water and correct antifreeze.

In order to protect your vehicle in extremely cold weather, use mix of 48 percent water and 52 percent antifreeze.

Caution

Plain water or the wrong mixture can damage the cooling system.

Do not use plain water, alcohol or methanol anti-freeze in coolant system.

The engine may overheat or even catch fire.

Caution

Coolant can be hazardous material.

Avoid repeated or prolonged contact with coolant.

Clean your skin and nails with soap and water after coming in contact with coolant.

Keep out of reach of children.

Coolant can irritate the skin and can cause illness or death if swallowed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution

It is not needed to add coolant more frequently than the recommended interval.

If you are adding coolant often, this may be a sign that your engine needs maintenance.

Contact a repairer for a check of the cooling system.

Engine Overheating

If the engine coolant temperature gauge pointer is in the red area, or if you have any other reason to suspect the engine may be overheating:

1. Stop the vehicle.
2. Turn off the air conditioning.
3. Let the engine idle for a few minutes.
4. Be sure the cooling fan is operating.

⚠ Warning

If steam is visible, move away from vehicle until engine is cool. Steam can cause serious burns.

Note

Using A/C while driving up long hills or in heavy traffic can cause the engine overheating.

If the fan is not operating and steam is visible, perform the following:

1. Turn off engine.
2. Move away from vehicle without opening the bonnet.
3. Allow engine to cool.
4. When steam is no longer visible, carefully open bonnet.
5. Consult a repairer as soon as possible.

If the fan is operating and steam is not visible, perform the following:

1. Carefully open the bonnet.
2. Idle engine until cool.
3. Check coolant level.

If the fan is operating, but engine temperature does not fall, perform the following:

1. Stop the engine.
2. Carefully open the bonnet.
3. Allow the engine to cool.
4. Check the coolant level.

If the coolant level is low, check for leaks for following components:

1. Radiator.
2. Radiator hoses.
3. Radiator connections.
4. Heater hoses.
5. Heater hose connections.
6. Water pump.

If you find a leak or other damage, or if the coolant is still leaking, consult a repairer immediately.

⚠ Warning

Scalding hot coolant steam could be blown out under pressure, which could cause serious injury.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

Never remove the coolant reservoir cap when engine and radiator are hot.

Power Steering Fluid





1. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/ OFF and let the engine compartment cool down.
2. Wipe the cap and the top of the reservoir clean.
3. Unscrew the cap and pull it straight up.
4. Wipe the dipstick with a clean rag.
5. Replace the cap and completely tighten it.
6. Remove the cap again and look at the fluid level on the dipstick.

Diesel & 3.0 Petrol

When the engine is hot, the level should be at the hot MAX level.

When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be between MIN and MAX on the dipstick.

2.4 Petrol

When the engine is hot, the level should be in HOT range.

When the engine is cold, the fluid level should be in COLD range on the dipstick.

Caution

Extremely small amounts of contamination can cause steering system damage and cause it to not work properly.

Do not allow contaminates to contact the fluid side of the reservoir cap or from entering the reservoir.

Caution

Do not operate vehicle without the required amount of power steering fluid.

To do so can damage power steering system of your vehicle, leading to costly repairs.

⚠ Warning

An overflow of the fluid may cause the fluid to burn or discolor paintwork.

(Continued)

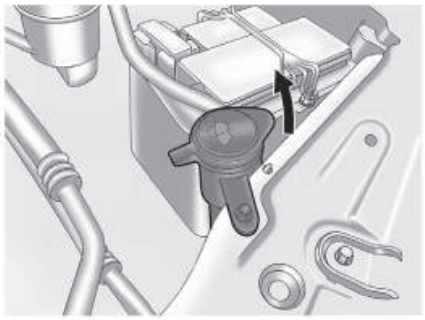
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

Do not overfill the reservoir.

An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

Washer Fluid



Fill with windshield washer fluid that contains anti-freeze.

To refill windshield washer fluid reservoir:

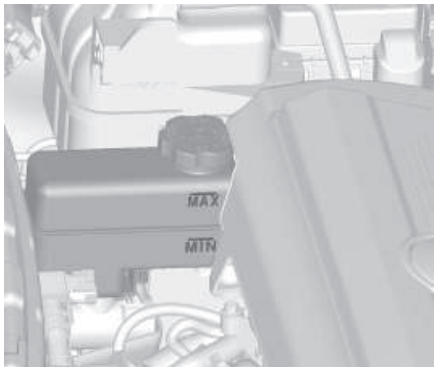
- Use only commercially available ready-to-use washer fluid for that purpose.
- Do not use tap water. Minerals present in tap water may plug the windshield washer lines.
- If air temperature is likely to go below freezing, use windshield washer fluid which has sufficient anti-freezing property.

Brake Fluid

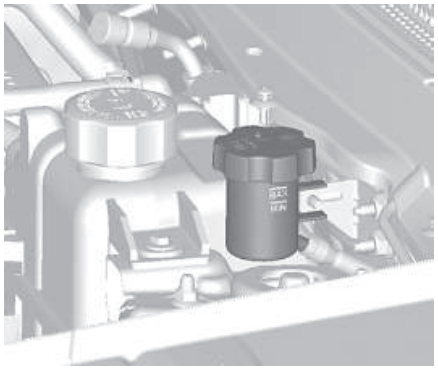
Brake and clutch fluid

⚠ Warning

Brake/clutch fluid is poisonous and corrosive. Avoid contact with eyes, skin, fabrics and painted surfaces.



<Brake fluid>



<Clutch fluid>

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The brake/clutch fluid level must be between the MIN and the MAX marks.

When filling up, ensure maximum cleanliness as contamination of the brake fluid can lead to brake system malfunctions. Have the cause of the loss of brake fluid remedied by a repairer.

Only use brake fluid approved for the vehicle.

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ⇨ *301*.

Caution

Make sure you thoroughly clean around the brake/clutch fluid reservoir cap before removing the cap.

Contamination of the brake/clutch fluid system can affect system performance, leading to costly repairs.

Caution

Using brake fluid other than GM recommended brake fluid may cause corrosion to components of brake system. Corrosion may make the brake system not work well and could cause a crash.

Caution

An overflow of brake/clutch fluid on the engine may cause the fluid to burn.

Do not overfill the reservoir.

An engine fire can cause personal injuries and damage your vehicle and other property.

Caution

Do not dispose of used brake/clutch fluid with your household waste.

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

Use your local, authorised waste management facility.

Used brake/clutch fluid and their containers are hazardous. They can damage your health and the environment.

Caution

Brake fluid is harsh and can irritate skin and eyes.

Do not allow the brake/clutch fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If it does, immediately wash the affected area thoroughly with soap and water, or hand cleaner.

Battery

Battery

Vehicles without stop-start system will be equipped with a lead acid battery. Vehicles with stop-start

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

system will be equipped with an AGM battery which has higher performance than lead acid battery.

Replacing the battery

Note

Any deviation from the instructions given in this paragraph may lead to a temporary deactivation of the stop start system. Only use batteries that allow the fuse box to be mounted above the battery. In vehicles with stop-start system, ensure to have the AGM (Absorbent Glass Mat) battery replaced with an AGM battery again. An AGM battery can be identified by the label on the battery. We recommend the use of an original GM battery.

Note

Using an AGM battery different from the original GM battery might result in a lower performance of the stop start system. We recommend that you have the battery replaced by your authorized repairer.

The vehicle battery is maintenance free.

Batteries do not belong in household waste. They must be disposed of at an appropriate recycling collection point.

Laying up the vehicle for more than 4 weeks can lead to battery discharge. Disconnect the clamp from the negative terminal of the vehicle battery.

Ensure the ignition is switched off before connecting or disconnecting the vehicle bat7tery.

Battery Power Protection ⇨ *127*.



Meaning of symbols:

- No sparks, naked flames or smoking.
- Always shield eyes. Explosive gases can cause blindness or injury.
- Keep the battery out of reach of children.
- The battery contains sulfuric acid which could cause blindness or serious burn injuries.
- See the Owner's Manual for further information.
- Explosive gas may be present in the vicinity of the battery.

⚠ Warning

Keep smoking materials away from a battery to avoid flames or sparks when the battery is checked because the explosive gas could be occurred.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

If the battery explodes, it can be result in damages of your vehicle and serious injury or death.

Avoid skin contact with battery acid because it can damage by contained highly corrosive and toxic sulfuric acid.

If you accidentally get it on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

Keep batteries out of the reach of children because it contains sulfuric acid and gas.

Do not allow battery acid to contact your skin, eyes, clothing or paint.

Do not open and tilt the battery.

Diesel Fuel Filter

Diesel particulate Filter

The diesel particulate filter system filters harmful soot particles out of the exhaust gases. The system includes a self-cleaning function that runs automatically during driving. The filter is cleaned by burning off the soot particles at high temperature. This process takes place automatically under set driving conditions and may take more than 15 minutes. The emission of smells and smoke during this process is normal.

Under certain driving conditions, e.g. short distances, the system cannot clean itself automatically.

If the filter requires cleaning or previous driving conditions did not enable automatic cleaning, DPF indicator illuminates or flashes. The indicator will go off the self-cleaning operation is complete.

Stopping the journey or switching off the engine during cleaning is not recommended.

⚠ Warning

Be sure the following precautions are taken because the exhaust parts are raised to high temperature during regeneration of DPF.

Things that can burn could touch hot exhaust parts under your vehicle and ignite. Do not place your vehicle over papers, leaves, dry grass or other things that can burn.

Turn the ignition OFF as soon as your vehicle enters a garage.

Do not go near the hot exhaust parts including exhaust tail pipe.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Properly functioning windshield wipers are essential for clear vision and safe driving. Regularly check the condition of the wiper blades. Replace hard, brittle or cracked blades or those that smear dirt on the windshield.

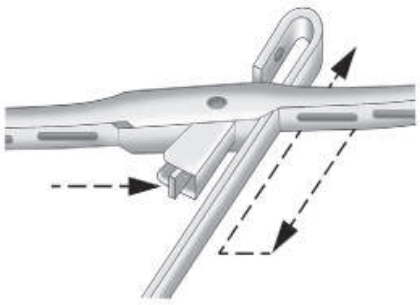
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Foreign material on the windshield or wiper blades can reduce the effectiveness of the wipers. If the blades are not wiping properly, clean both the windshield and the blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent. Rinse them thoroughly with water.

Repeat the process, if necessary. There is no way to remove traces of silicone from glass. Therefore never apply silicone polish or wax polish to your vehicle's windshield or you will get streak, blade chatter or blade noise that impairs the driver's vision.

Do not use solvents, gasoline, kerosene, or paint thinner to clean wipers. These are harsh and can damage the blades and painted surfaces.

Replacing wiper blades



1. Press and hold the wiper blade retaining clip.
2. Pull the wiper blade off the wiper arm.
3. Install a new wiper blade onto the arm.

Headlamp Aiming

Headlamp aim has been preset and should need no further adjustment.

If the vehicle is damaged in a crash, the headlamp aim may be affected. If adjustment to the headlamps is necessary, see your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Bulb Replacement

For the proper type of replacement bulbs, *Replacement Bulbs* ⇨ *252*.

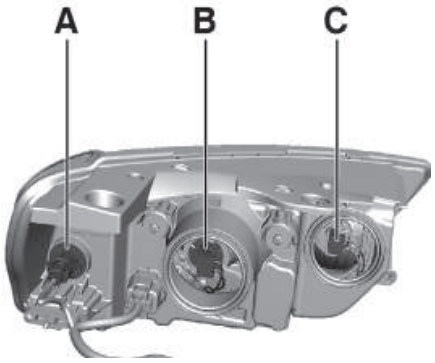
For any bulb-changing procedure not listed in this section, contact your dealer.

Halogen Bulbs

⚠ Warning

Halogen bulbs have pressurized gas inside and can burst if you drop or scratch the bulb. You or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the instructions on the bulb package.

Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

A. Turn Signal Lamp

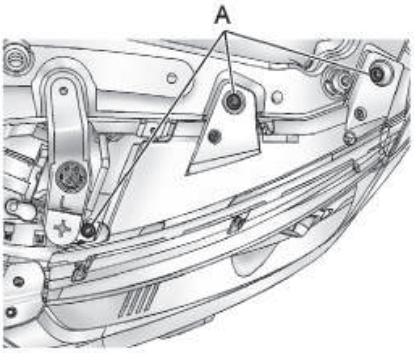
B. Low-Beam Headlamp

C. High-Beam Headlamp

Headlamps

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. *Hood* ⇨ *228*.



2. Remove the three screws (A) retaining the headlamp assembly.
3. Pull the headlamp assembly straight forward releasing the retaining studs from the grommets.
4. Remove the dust cover from the back of the headlamp housing by turning counterclockwise a quarter turn.
5. Remove the bulb socket from the headlamp by releasing the spring clamp and pulling the socket straight out of the lamp assembly.

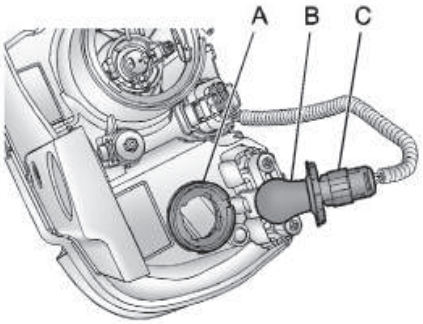
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

6. Remove the bulb from the socket.
7. Install the new bulb in the socket.
8. Install the bulb socket into the lamp assembly and attach the spring clamp.
9. Install the dust cover in the back of the headlamp housing by turning clockwise a quarter turn.
10. Reverse the steps to install the headlamp assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lamps

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Remove the headlamp assembly.

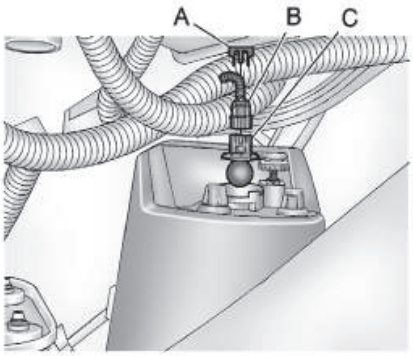


2. Turn the bulb socket (C) counterclockwise to remove it from the headlamp assembly (A).
3. Remove the bulb (B) from the socket (C) by turning counterclockwise and pulling straight out.
4. Install the new bulb into the socket (C) and reinstall the socket into the headlamp assembly (A) by turning it clockwise.
5. Install the headlamp assembly.

Fog Lamps

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the hood. *Hood ⇨ 228*.
2. Remove the headlamp assembly. *Headlamps, Front Turn Signal and Parking Lamps ⇨ 249*.

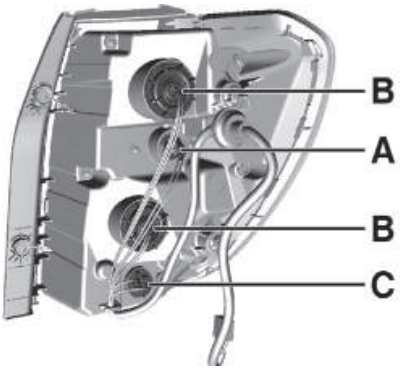


3. Remove the connector retaining tab (A).
4. Disconnect the wiring harness connector from the bulb (C) by pressing the connector release (B) and pulling straight back.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

5. Remove the old bulb from the from the fog lamp assembly by squeezing the bulb release tabs and pulling straight out.
6. Push the new bulb into the bulb assembly until it locks into place.
7. Install the wiring harness connector to the bulb. Be sure the connector release (B) locks into place.
8. Install the connector retaining tab (A).
9. Replace the headlamp assembly.

Taillamps, Turn Signal, Stoplamps, and Back-Up Lamps



Driver Side Shown, Passenger Side Similar

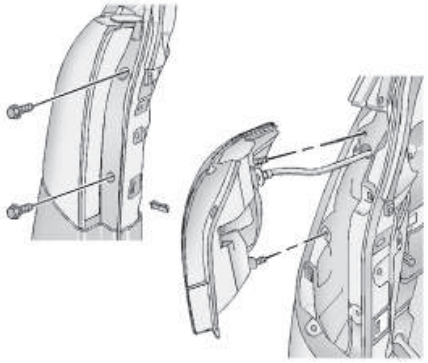
A. Back-up Lamp

B. Stoplamp/Taillamp(LED)

C. Turn Signal Lamp

To replace one of these lamps:(Except LED lamp)

1. Open the liftgate. *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.



2. Remove the two screws retaining the taillamp assembly in place.
3. Pull the lamp assembly straight rearward releasing the retaining studs from the grommets.
4. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it.
5. Turn the bulb counterclockwise to remove it from the bulb socket.
6. Install the new bulb into the bulb socket.
7. Turn the bulb socket clockwise to reinstall.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

8. Install the lamp assembly into the vehicle. Make sure to align the retaining studs to the grommets.
9. Install two screws to secure lamp assembly in place on the vehicle.

Side Turn Signal Lamps

If the side turn signal lamp in the outside rearview mirror is not operated, have the checked by repairer.

Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)

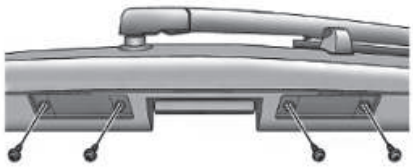
If the CHMSL is not operated, have the checked by repairer.

License Plate Lamp

The licence plate lamps for this vehicle are on the trunk lid.

To replace one of these bulbs:

1. Open the liftgate. *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.



2. Remove two screws and the lamp assembly.
3. Turn the bulb socket counterclockwise to remove it from the lamp assembly.
4. Pull the bulb straight out of the bulb socket.
5. Push the replacement bulb straight into the bulb socket and turn the bulb socket clockwise to install it into the lamp assembly.
6. Install the bulb socket back into the lamp housing.
7. Install the lamp cover using two screws.

Replacement Bulbs

Exterior Lamp	Bulb Number
Back-Up Lamp	W16W
Front Fog Lamp	PSX24W
Front Turn Signal Lamp	PY21W
High Beam Headlamp	H7LL
License Plate Lamp	W5W
Low Beam Headlamp	H7LL
Rear Turn Signal Lamp	WY21W
Center High-Mounted Stoplamp (CHMSL)	W5W (5ea)

For replacement bulbs not listed here, contact your dealer.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Electrical System

Electrical System Overload

The vehicle has fuses and circuit breakers to protect against an electrical system overload.

When the current electrical load is too heavy, the circuit breaker opens and closes, protecting the circuit until the current load returns to normal or the problem is fixed. This greatly reduces the chance of circuit overload and fire caused by electrical problems.

Fuses and circuit breakers protect power devices in the vehicle.

Replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

If there is a problem on the road and a fuse needs to be replaced, the same amperage fuse can be borrowed. Choose some feature of the vehicle that is not needed to use and replace it as soon as possible.

Headlamp Wiring

An electrical overload may cause the lamps to go on and off, or in some cases to remain off. Have the headlamp wiring checked right away if the lamps go on and off or remain off.

Windshield Wipers

If the wiper motor overheats due to heavy snow or ice, the windshield wipers will stop until the motor cools and will then restart.

Although the circuit is protected from electrical overload, overload due to heavy snow or ice may cause wiper linkage damage. Always clear ice and heavy snow from the windshield before using the windshield wipers.

If the overload is caused by an electrical problem and not snow or ice, be sure to get it fixed.

Fuses and Circuit Breakers

The wiring circuits in the vehicle are protected from short circuits by a combination of fuses and circuit breakers. This greatly reduces the chance of damage caused by electrical problems.

To check a fuse, look at the silver-colored band inside the fuse. If the band is broken or melted, replace the fuse. Be sure to replace a bad fuse with a new one of the identical size and rating.

Fuses of the same amperage can be temporarily borrowed from another fuse location, if a fuse goes out. Replace the fuse as soon as possible.

To identify and check fuses, circuit breakers, and relays, *Engine Compartment Fuse Block* ⇨ *254*, *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *258*.

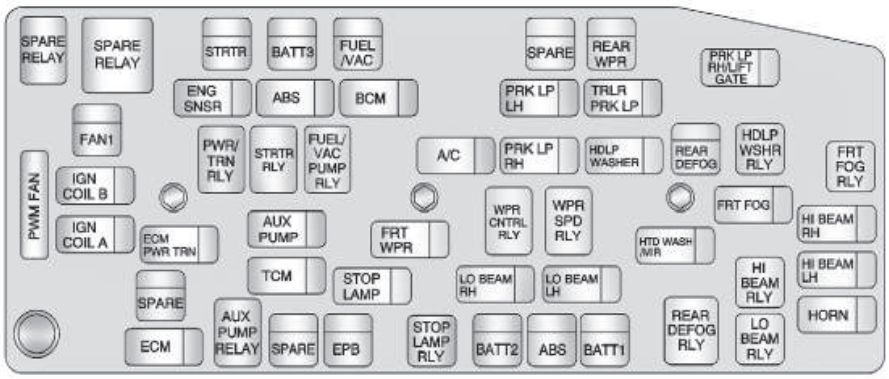
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine Compartment Fuse Block

The engine compartment fuse block is located on the right side of the engine compartment, near the battery.

Caution

Spilling liquid on any electrical component on the vehicle may damage it. Always keep the covers on any electrical component.



The vehicle may not be equipped with all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
ABS	Antilock Brake System
A/C	Heater, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning System
AUX PUMP	Auxiliary Pump

Fuses	Usage
BATT1	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 1
BATT2	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 2
BATT3	Instrument Panel Fuse Block Main Feed 3

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
BCM	Body Control Module
ECM	Engine Control Module
ECM PWR TRN	Engine Control Module/Powertrain
ENG SNSR	Miscellaneous Engine Sensors
EPB	Electric Parking Brake
FAN1	Cooling Fan 1
FRT FOG	Not Used
FRT WPR	Front Wiper Motor
FUEL/VAC	Fuel Pump/ Vacuum Pump
HDLP WASHER	Headlamp Washer
HI BEAM LH	High-Beam Headlamp (Left)
HI BEAM RH	High-Beam Headlamp (Right)
HORN	Horn

Fuses	Usage
HTD WASH/MIR	Heated Washer Fluid/Heated Mirrors
IGN COIL A	Ignition Coil A
IGN COIL B	Ignition Coil B
LO BEAM LH	Low-Beam Headlamp (Left)
LO BEAM RH	Low-Beam Headlamp (Right)
PRK LP LH	Parking Lamps (Left)
PRK LP RH	Parking Lamps (Right)
PRK LP RH/ LIFTGATE	Parking Lamps (Right)/Liftgate
PWM FAN	Pulse Width Modulation Fan
REAR DEFOG	Rear Window Defogger
REAR WPR	Rear Wiper Motor
SPARE	Not Used
STOP LAMP	Stoplamps

Fuses	Usage
STRTR	Starter
TCM	Transmission Control Module
TRLR PRK LP	Trailer Parking Lamps

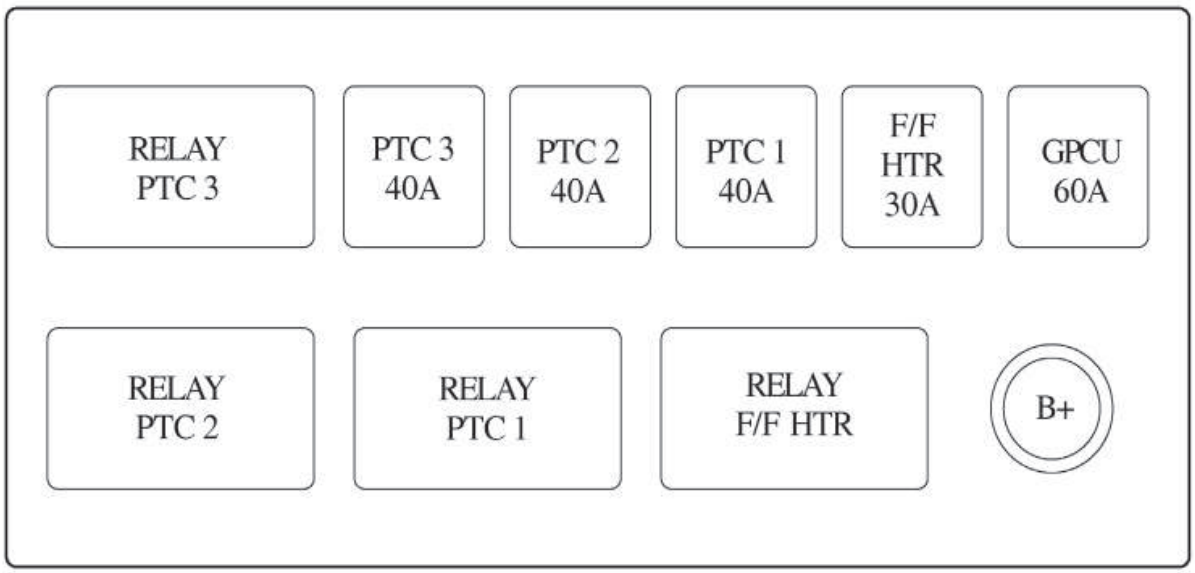
Relays	Usage
SPARE RELAY	Spare Relay
SPARE RELAY	Spare Relay
AUX PUMP RELAY	Auxiliary Pump Relay
FRT FOG RLY	Not Used
FUEL/VAC PUMP RLY	Fuel Pump/Vacuum Pump Relay
HDLP WSHR RLY	Headlamp Washer
HI BEAM RLY	High-Beam Headlamps
LO BEAM RLY	Low-Beam Headlamps

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Relays	Usage
PWR/ TRN RLY	Powertrain
REAR DEFOG RLY	Rear Window Defogger
STOP LAMP RLY	Stoplamps
STRTR RLY	Starter
WPR CNTRL RLY	Wiper Control
WPR SPD RLY	Wiper Speed

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Auxiliary engine room fuse block (Diesel only)

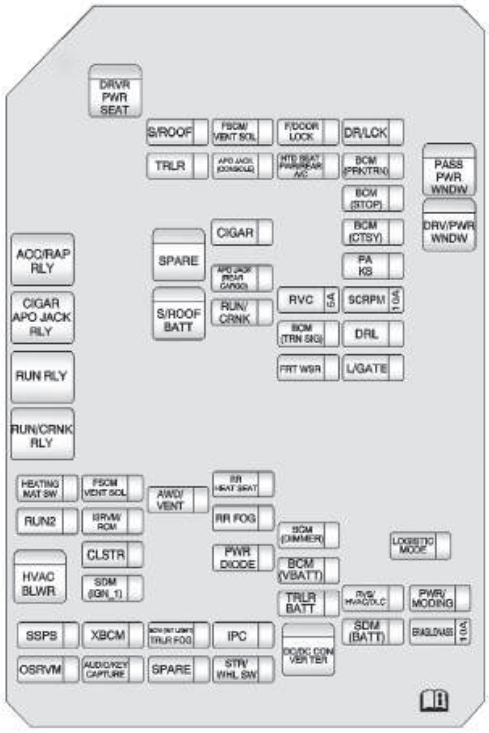


Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Instrument Panel Fuse Block

The instrument panel fuse block is located on the right side of the lower console.

Pull the latch of the fuse box cover straight back to access the fuses.



The vehicle may not have all of the fuses, relays, and features shown.

Fuses	Usage
RVC	Rear View Camera

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
SCRPM	Selective Catalytic Reduction Power Module
APO JACK (CONSOLE)	Auxiliary Power Outlet Jack
APO JACK (REAR CARGO)	Auxiliary Power Outlet Jack Rear Cargo
AUDIO/KEY CAPTURE	Audio System/ Key Capture
AWD/VENT	All-Wheel Drive/ Ventilation
BCM (CTSY)	Body Control Module (Courtesy)
BCM (DIMMER)	Body Control Module (Dimmer)
BCM (INT LIGHT) TRLR FOG	Body Control Module (Interior Light), Trailer Fog Lamps
BCM (PRK/TRN)	Body Control Module (Parking/ Turn Signal)

Fuses	Usage
BCM (STOP)	Body Control Module (Stop Lamp)
BCM (TRN SIG)	Body Control Module (Turn Signal)
BCM (VBATT)	Body Control Module (Battery Voltage)
CIGAR	Cigarette
CLSTR	Instrument Cluster
DC/DC CONVERTER	DC/DC Converter
DRL	Daytime Running Lamps
DR/LCK	Driver Door Lock
DRVR PWR SEAT	Driver Power Seat
DRV/ PWR WNDW	Driver Power Window
F/DOOR LOCK	Fuel Door Lock
FRT WSR	Front Washer

Fuses	Usage
FSCM	Fuel System Control Module
FSCM/ VENT SOL	Fuel System Control Module/ Vent Solenoid
HEATING MAT SW	Heating Mat Switch
HTD SEAT PWR/ REAR A/C	Heated Seat Power/Rear Air Conditioning
HVAC BLWR	Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning Blower
IPC	Instrument Panel Cluster
ISRVM/RCM	Inside Rearview Mirror/Remote Compass Module
L/GATE	Lift Gate
LOGISTIC MODE	Logistic Mode

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Fuses	Usage
OSRVM	Outside Rear View Mirror
PA KS	PA KS
PASS PWR WNDW	Passenger Power Window
PWR DIODE	Power Diode
PWR MODING	Power Moding
RR FOG	Rear Defogger
RR HEAT SEAT	Rear Heated Seat
RUN 2	Power Battery Key On Run
RUN/CRNK	Run Crank
RVS/ HVAC/DLC	RVS/Heating, Ventilation, and Air Conditioning/ Data Link Connection
SDM (BATT)	Safety Diagnosis Module (Battery)
SDM (IGN 1)	Safety Diagnosis Module (Ignition 1)

Fuses	Usage
SPARE	Spare
S/ROOF	Sunroof
S/ROOF BATT	Sunroof Battery
SSPS	Speed Sensitive Power Steering
STR/WHL SW	Steering Wheel Switch
TRLR	Trailer
TRLR BATT	Trailer Battery
XBCM	Export Body Control Module

Relays	Usage
ACC/RAP RLY	Accessory/Run Accessory Power
CIGAR APO JACK RLY	Cigarette and Auxiliary Power Outlet
RUN/ CRNK RLY	Run/Crank
RUN RLY	Run

Wheels and Tires

Tires

Drive over objects slowly and at right angles, if possible. Driving over sharp objects can cause tire and wheel damage. When parking, avoid contacting the curb.

Regularly check the tires for damage. See your dealer if there is damage or unusual wear.

Winter Tires

Winter tires improve driving safety at temperatures below 7 °C and should, therefore, be used on all wheels.

Tire Designations

e.g., 215/60 R 16 95 H

215 = Tire width, mm

60 = Cross-section ratio (tire height to tire width), %

R = Belt type : Radial

RF = Type : RunFlat

16 = Wheel diameter, inches

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

95 = Load index e.g., 95 is equivalent to 690 kg

H = Speed code letter

Speed code letter:

Q = up to 160 km/h

S = up to 180 km/h

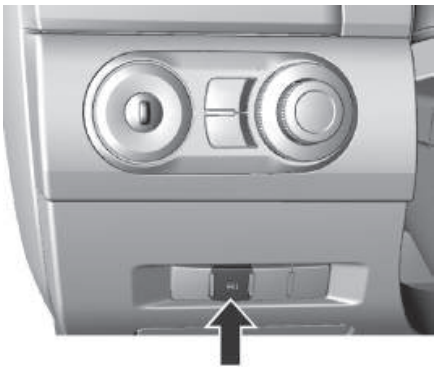
T = up to 190 km/h

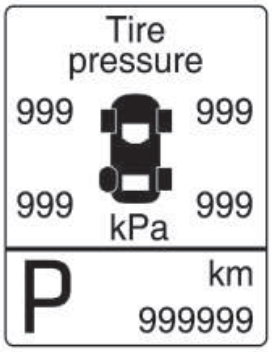
H = up to 210 km/h

V = up to 240 km/h

W = up to 270 km/h

Tire Pressure





If you want to see the tire pressure, press shortly until the tire pressure is displayed.

Check the pressure of cold tires at least every 14 days and before any long journey. Do not forget the spare tire.

Unscrew the valve cap.



Tire pressures label is on the driver's door frame.

The recommended tire pressure is shown on the Tire and Loading Information label. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*.

The tire pressure data refers to cold tires. It applies to summer and winter tires.

Always inflate the spare tire to the pressure specified for full load.

Incorrect tire pressures will impair safety, vehicle handling, comfort, and fuel economy and will increase tire wear.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Check the inflation pressures when the tires are cold. Warm tires produce inaccurate readings. Tires can become warm after driving more than 1.6 km (1 mi) and stay warm for up to three hours after the vehicle has stopped.

⚠ Warning

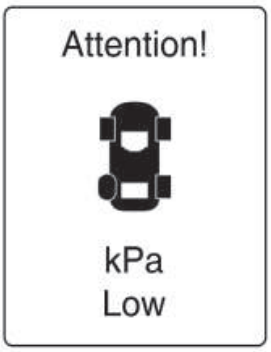
If the pressure is too low, this can result in considerable tire warmup and internal damage, leading to tread separation and even to tire blow-out at high speeds.

Check Control

If tire pressure is too low, the display indicates which tire to check, e.g.:



Check tire pressure at next opportunity using suitable gauge. *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *262*.



Stop immediately and check tire. *Tire Pressure Monitor System* ⇨ *262*.

Tire Pressure Monitor System



If equipped, the tire pressure monitoring system light illuminates yellow.

This light comes on when the ignition is turned on and goes off shortly after the engine starts.

If the light comes on while driving, one or more of the tires is significantly underiflated.

Stop the vehicle in a safe place, check the tires, and inflate the tires to the recommended pressure on the tire inflation pressure label.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When the system detects a malfunction, the light blinks for about one minute and then stays on for the remainder of the ignition cycle.

The malfunction light comes on until the problem is corrected. Have the vehicle checked by a repairer.

Tire Pressure Monitor Operation

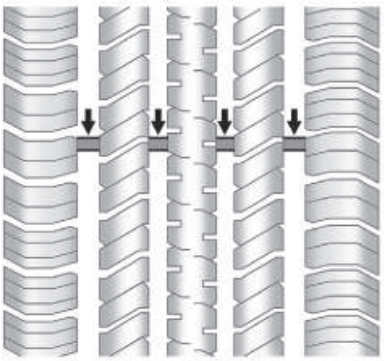
If equipped, the Tire Pressure Monitor System (TPMS) checks the pressure of all four tires once per minute when the vehicle exceeds a certain speed.

All tires must have pressure sensors and be filled to the recommended pressure for the system to operate properly.

If tires without sensors are installed on the vehicle, the TPMS system is not operational. Retrofitting of sensors is possible.

Tread Depth

Check tread depth at regular intervals. Tires should be replaced for safety reasons at a tread depth of 2-3 mm (4 mm for winter tires).



The legally permissible minimum tread depth (1.6 mm) has been reached when the tread has worn down as far as one of the tread wear indicators (TWI). Their position is indicated by markings on the sidewall.

If there is more wear at the front than the rear, swap round front wheels and rear wheels periodically. Ensure that the direction of rotation of the wheels is the same as before.

Tires age, even if they are not used. We recommend tire replacement every 6 years.

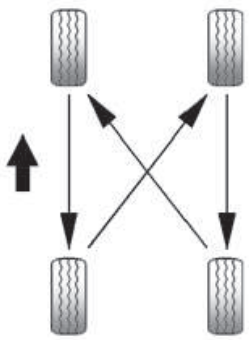
Tire Rotation

Tires should be rotated every 12 000 km (7,500 mi).

Tires are rotated to achieve a more uniform wear for all tires. The first rotation is the most important.

Anytime unusual wear is noticed, rotate the tires as soon as possible, check for proper tire inflation pressure, and check for damaged tires or wheels. If the unusual wear continues after the rotation, check the wheel alignment.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



When rotating the tires, always use the correct rotation pattern shown here.

Do not include the spare tire in the tire rotation.

Adjust the front and rear tires to the recommended inflation pressure on the Tire and Loading Information Label after the tires have been rotated. *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*, *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*.

Reset the Tire Pressure Monitor System. *Tire Pressure Monitor Operation* ⇨ *263*.

Check that all wheel nuts are properly tightened. See “Wheel Nut Torque” under *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *307*.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

Lightly coat the center of the wheel hub with wheel bearing grease after a wheel change or tire rotation to prevent corrosion or rust build-up. Do not get grease on the flat wheel mounting surface or on the wheel nuts or bolts.

Buying New Tires

This vehicle was delivered with radial tires. We recommend using radials of the same size, design, tread wear, temperature and speed rating when replacing them.

⚠ Warning

Tires could explode during improper service. Attempting to mount or dismount a tire could cause injury or death. Only your dealer or authorized tire service center should mount or dismount the tires.

⚠ Warning

Mixing tires of different sizes, brands, or types may cause loss of control of the vehicle, resulting in a crash or other vehicle damage. Use the correct size, brand, and type of tires on all wheels.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Different Size Tires and Wheels

If wheels or tires are installed that are a different size than the original equipment wheels and tires, vehicle performance, including its braking, ride and handling characteristics, stability, and resistance to rollover may be affected. If the vehicle has electronic systems such as antilock brakes, rollover airbags, roll bars, traction control, electronic stability control, or All-Wheel Drive, the performance of these systems can also be affected.

⚠ Warning

If different sized wheels are used, there may not be an acceptable level of performance and safety if tires not recommended for those wheels are selected. This increases the chance of a crash and serious injury. Only use GM specific wheel and tire systems

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

developed for the vehicle, and have them properly installed by a GM certified technician.

Buying New Tires ⇨ *264*, *Accessories and Modifications* ⇨ *227*.

Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance

The tires and wheels were aligned and balanced at the factory to provide the longest tire life and best overall performance.

Adjustments to wheel alignment and tire balancing are not necessary on a regular basis.

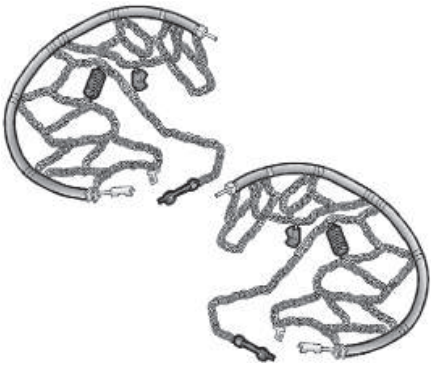
Your vehicle's suspension and steering systems need some time to settle from the shipping process, and adjust to the way you drive and the amount of passengers and cargo you carry with you. GM recommends that you drive your new vehicle at least 800 kilometres before evaluating your vehicle for steering pull. Some slight pull to the left or right, depending on the crown of the road and/or other road surface variations such as troughs or ruts, is normal.

So, consider requesting an alignment check only if the vehicle is significantly pulling to one side or the other, or if you notice unusual tire wear. If the vehicle is vibrating when driving on a smooth road, the tires and wheels may need to be rebalanced.

See your authorised repairer for proper diagnosis.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Chains



Remove any wheel coverings, if the vehicle has them, before fitting chains to the vehicle to avoid scratching them.

- Follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
- Only use tire chains on 215/70R16 size front tires. Do not use chains on the other tire sizes.
- Re-tighten the chains after driving about 1 km (0.5 miles).
- SAE class S-type chains are proper type for this vehicle.
- Always drive slowly when you are using tire chains.
- If you hear the chains contacting the vehicle, stop and re-tighten the chains.
- If the contact continues, slow down until it stops.

If a Tire Goes Flat

It is unusual for a tire to blow out while driving, especially if the tires are maintained properly. *Tires* ⇨ *260*. If air goes out of a tire, it is much more likely to leak out slowly. But if there is ever a blowout, here are a few tips about what to expect and what to do:

If a front tire fails, the flat tire creates a drag that pulls the vehicle toward that side. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and grip the steering wheel firmly. Steer to maintain lane position, and then gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

A rear blowout, particularly on a curve, acts much like a skid and may require the same correction as used in a skid. Stop pressing the accelerator pedal and steer to straighten the vehicle. It may be very bumpy and noisy. Gently brake to a stop, well off the road, if possible.

⚠ Warning

Driving on a flat tire will cause permanent damage to the tire. Re-inflating a tire after it has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat may cause a blowout and a serious crash. Never attempt to re-inflate a tire that has been driven on while severely underinflated or flat. Have your dealer or an authorized tire service center repair or replace the flat tire as soon as possible.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place, well off the road, if possible. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *124*.

⚠ Warning

Changing a tire can be dangerous. The vehicle can slip off the jack and roll over or fall

(Continued)

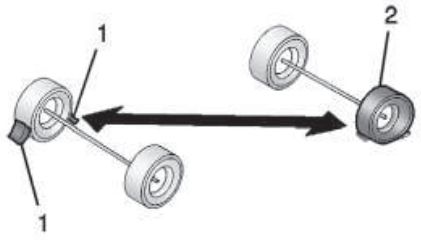
Warning (Continued)

causing injury or death. Find a level place to change the tire. To help prevent the vehicle from moving:

1. Set the parking brake firmly.
2. Put an automatic transmission in P (Park) or a manual transmission in 1 (First) or R (Reverse).
3. Turn off the engine and do not restart while the vehicle is raised.
4. Do not allow passengers to remain in the vehicle.
5. Place wheel blocks, if equipped, on both sides of the tire at the opposite corner of the tire being changed.

This vehicle may come with a jack and spare tire or a tire sealant and compressor kit. To use the jacking equipment to change a spare tire safely, follow the instructions below. *Tire Changing* ⇨ *274*. To use the tire sealant and compressor kit, *Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *268*.

When the vehicle has a flat tire (2), use the following example as a guide to assist you in the placement of wheel blocks (1), if equipped.



1. Wheel Block (If Equipped)
2. Flat Tire

The following information explains how to repair or change a tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

⚠ Warning

Idling a vehicle in an enclosed area with poor ventilation is dangerous. Engine exhaust may enter the vehicle. Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide (CO) which cannot be seen or smelled. It can cause unconsciousness and even death. Never run the engine in an enclosed area that has no fresh air ventilation. *Engine Exhaust ⇨ 194*.

⚠ Warning

Overinflating a tire could cause the tire to rupture and you or others could be injured. Be sure to read and follow the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions and inflate the tire to its

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

recommended pressure. Do not exceed the recommended pressure.

⚠ Warning

Storing the tire sealant and compressor kit or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store the tire sealant and compressor kit in its original location.

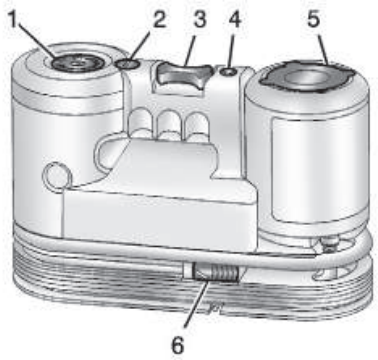
If this vehicle has a tire sealant and compressor kit, there may not be a spare tire, tire changing equipment, and on some vehicles there may not be a place to store a tire.

The tire sealant and compressor can be used to temporarily seal punctures up to 6 mm (0.25 in) in the tread area of the tire. It can also be used to inflate an under inflated tire.

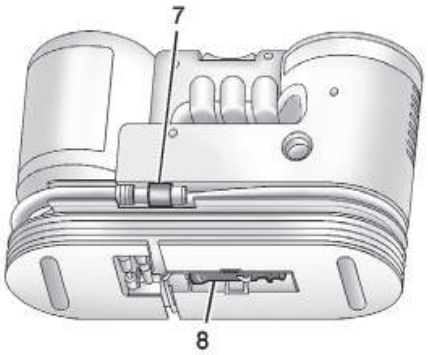
If the tire has been separated from the wheel, has damaged sidewalls, or has a large puncture, the tire is too severely damaged for the tire sealant and compressor kit to be effective.

Read and follow all of the tire sealant and compressor kit instructions.

The kit includes:



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



1. Pressure Gauge
2. Pressure Deflation Button (White)
3. Selector Switch
4. On/Off Button (Orange)
5. Tire Sealant Canister
6. Air Only Hose (Black Hose/ White Tip)
7. Sealant/Air Hose (Clear Hose/ Orange Tip)
8. Power Plug

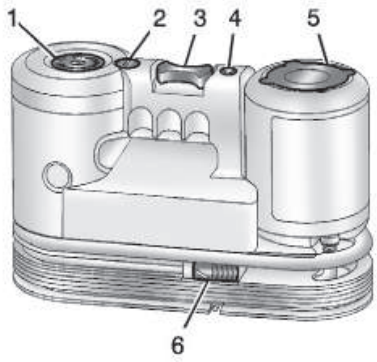
Tire Sealant

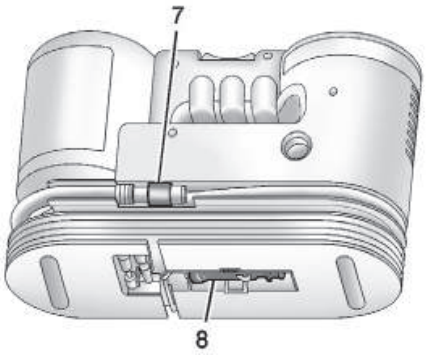
Read and follow the safe handling instructions on the label adhered to the sealant canister.

Check the tire sealant expiration date on the sealant canister. The sealant canister should be replaced before its expiration date. Replacement sealant canisters are available at your local dealer. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

There is only enough sealant to seal one tire. After usage, the sealant canister and sealant/air hose assembly must be replaced. See “Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister” following.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit to Temporarily Seal and Inflate a Punctured Tire





Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

When using the tire sealant and compressor kit during cold temperatures, warm the kit in a heated environment for five minutes. This will help to inflate the tire faster.

If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *124*.

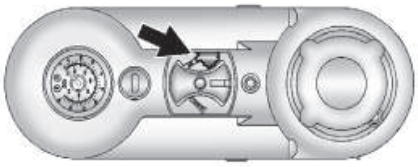
If a Tire Goes Flat ⇨ *266*.

Do not remove any objects that have penetrated the tire.

1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *274*.
2. Unwrap the sealant/air hose (7) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the valve stem cap from the flat tire by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the sealant/air hose (7) onto the tire valve stem. Turn it clockwise until it is tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *95*.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.
7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.



8. Turn the selector switch (3) counterclockwise to the Sealant + Air position.
9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit on.

   The compressor will inject sealant and air into the tire.

   The pressure gauge (1) will initially show a high pressure while the compressor pushes the sealant into the tire. Once the sealant is completely dispersed into the tire, the pressure will quickly drop and start to rise again as the tire inflates with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (1). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*.

    The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate pressure

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

Caution

If the recommended pressure cannot be reached after approximately 25 minutes, the vehicle should not be driven farther. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant and compressor kit cannot inflate the tire. Remove the power plug from the accessory power outlet and unscrew the inflating hose from the tire valve.

11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    The tire is not sealed and will continue to leak air until the vehicle is driven and the sealant is distributed in the tire, therefore, Steps 12 through 18 must be done immediately after Step 11.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.

12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Turn the sealant/air hose (7) counterclockwise to remove it from the tire valve stem.
14. Replace the tire valve stem cap.
15. Replace the sealant/air hose (7), and the power plug (8) back in their original location.



16. If the flat tire was able to inflate to the recommended inflation pressure, remove the maximum speed label from the sealant canister (5) and place it in a highly visible location.

    Do not exceed the speed on this label until the damaged tire is repaired / replaced or 80 km/h.

17. Return the equipment to its original storage location in the vehicle.
18. Immediately drive the vehicle 8 km (5 mi) to distribute the sealant in the tire.
19. Stop at a safe location and check the tire pressure. Refer to Steps 1 through 11 under “Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured).”

    If the tire pressure has fallen more than 68 kPa (10 psi) below the recommended inflation pressure, stop driving the vehicle. The tire is too severely damaged and the tire sealant cannot seal the tire.

    If the tire pressure has not dropped more than 68 kPa (10 psi) from the recommended

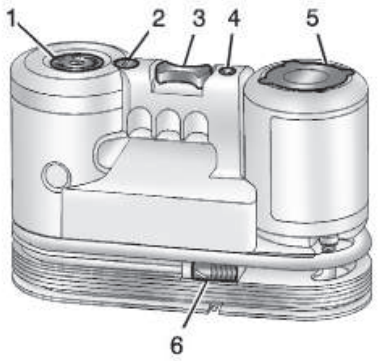
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

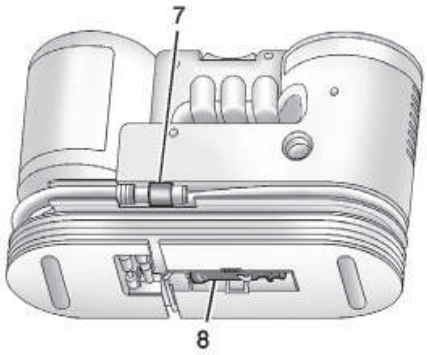
inflation pressure, inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure.

20. Wipe off any sealant from the wheel, tire or vehicle.
21. Dispose of the used sealant canister (5) and sealant/air hose (7) assembly at a local dealer or in accordance with local regulations and practices.
22. Replace it with a new canister available from your dealer.
23. After temporarily sealing a tire using the tire sealant and compressor kit, take the vehicle to an authorized dealer within a 161 km (100 mi) of driving to have the tire repaired or replaced.

Using the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit without Sealant to Inflate a Tire (Not Punctured)

To use the air compressor to inflate a tire with air only and not sealant:





If a tire goes flat, avoid further tire and wheel damage by driving slowly to a level place. Turn on the hazard warning flashers. *Hazard Warning Flashers* ⇨ *124*.

If a Tire Goes Flat ⇨ *266*.

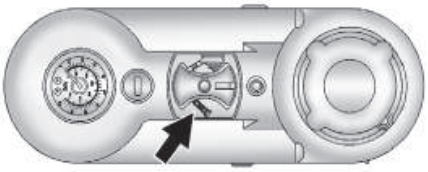
1. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit from its storage location. *Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit* ⇨ *274*
2. Unwrap the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8).
3. Place the kit on the ground.

   Make sure the tire valve stem is positioned close to the ground so the hose will reach it.
4. Remove the tire valve stem cap by turning it counterclockwise.
5. Attach the air only hose (6) onto the tire valve stem and turn it clockwise until tight.
6. Plug the power plug (8) into the accessory power outlet in the vehicle. Unplug all items from other accessory power outlets. *Power Outlets* ⇨ *95*.

   Do not pinch the power plug cord in the door or window.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

7. Start the vehicle. The vehicle must be running while using the air compressor.



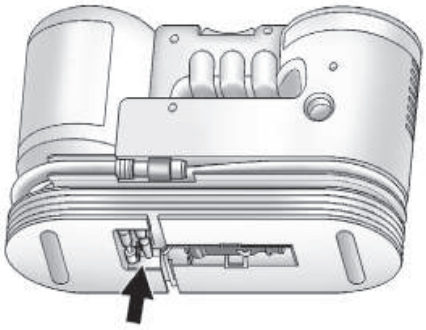
8. Turn the selector switch (3) clockwise to the Air Only position.
9. Press the on/off (4) button to turn the compressor on.

   The compressor will inflate the tire with air only.
10. Inflate the tire to the recommended inflation pressure using the pressure gauge (1). The recommended inflation pressure can be found on the Tire and Loading Information label. *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*.

    The pressure gauge (1) may read higher than the actual tire pressure while the compressor is on. Turn the compressor off to get an accurate reading. The compressor may be turned on/off until the correct pressure is reached.

    If you inflate the tire higher than the recommended pressure you can adjust the excess pressure by pressing the pressure deflation button (4) until the proper pressure reading is reached. This option is only functional when using the air only hose (6).
11. Press the on/off button (4) to turn the tire sealant and compressor kit off.

    Be careful while handling the tire sealant and compressor kit as it could be warm after usage.
12. Unplug the power plug (8) from the accessory power outlet in the vehicle.
13. Disconnect the air only hose (6) from the tire valve stem, by turning it counterclockwise, and replace the tire valve stem cap.
14. Replace the air only hose (6) and the power plug (8) back in its original location.
15. Place the equipment in the original storage location in the vehicle.



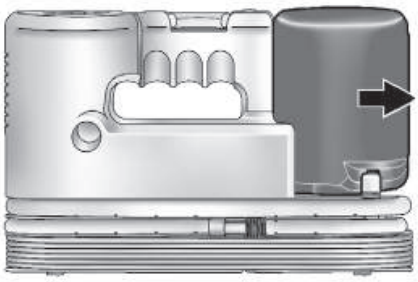
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The tire sealant and compressor kit has an accessory adapter located in a compartment on the bottom of its housing that may be used to inflate air mattresses, balls, etc.

Removal and Installation of the Sealant Canister

To remove the sealant canister:

1. Unwrap both hoses.

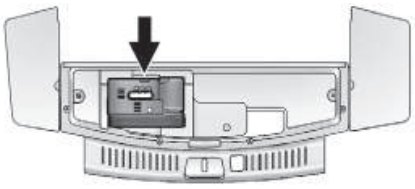


2. Slide the canister away from the compressor housing.
3. Unscrew the hose connected to the canister.
4. Replace with a new canister which is available from your dealer.
5. Attach the hose to the canister and tighten.
6. Slide the new canister into place. Make sure it sits in the compressor housing socket.
7. Replace both hoses to their original location.

Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit

To access the tire sealant and compressor kit:

1. Open the liftgate. *Liftgate* ⇨ *33*.
2. Lift the cover.

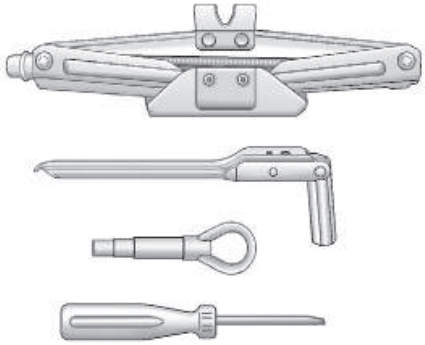


3. Remove the tire sealant and compressor kit.

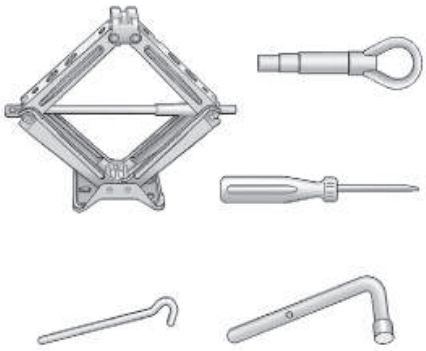
To store the tire sealant and compressor kit, reverse the steps.

Tire Changing

Removing the Spare Tire and Tools



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



In some models, jack handle type is applied to the vehicle.

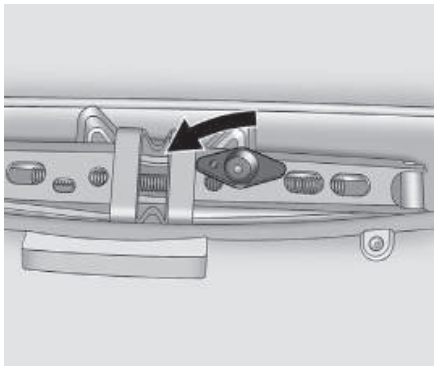
⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

The jack and tools are located in the luggage compartment below the rear bumper.

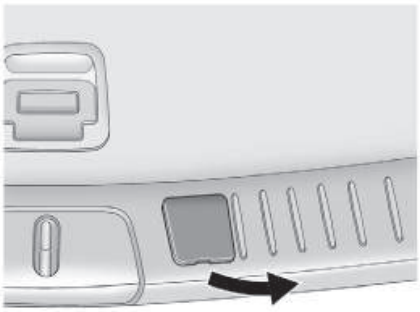
To remove the jack and tools:

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Lift the floor cover to the locate the wing bolt.



3. Turn the wing bolt counterclockwise to remove it from the jack.
4. Remove the jack and tool bag.
5. Remove the straps holding the tool bag.
6. Remove the tools from the bag.

To remove the spare tire:



1. Use a flat-blade screwdriver to remove the hole cover above the rear bumper.
2. Use the wheel wrench to loosen the bolt to lower the spare tire.
3. Unhook the cable on the tire carrier located below the rear bumper.
4. Remove the spare tire.

Stow the jack and tools securely so they do not rattle while the car is moving.

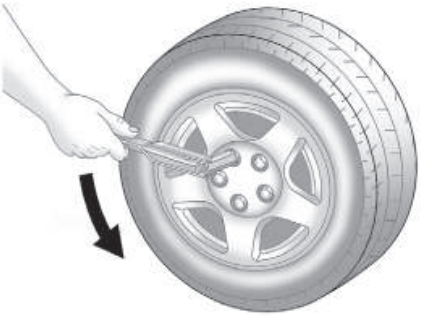
Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Removing the Flat Tire and Installing the Spare Tire

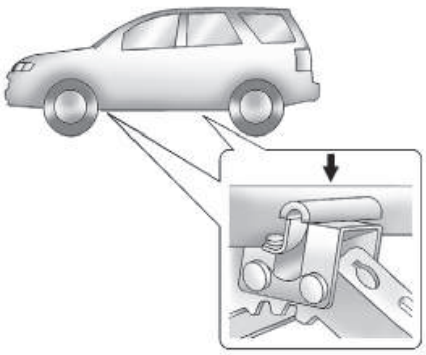
1. Do a safety check before proceeding. *If a Tire Goes Flat* ⇨ *266*.

   Call a garage or motoring service for assistance if it is not safe to jack the vehicle or change the tire safely.

2. Use the wheel wrench or screwdriver to remove the wheel cover if there is one.



3. Use the wheel wrench to loosen all the wheel nuts. Do not remove any of the nuts until the wheel is off the ground.
4. Attach the wheel wrench to the jack bolt head and rotate the wheel wrench clockwise to lift the head a little.



5. There are notches under the doors at the front and rear of the vehicle.

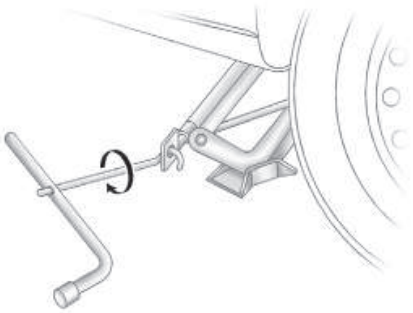
   Position the jack vertically at the front or rear jacking notch closest to the wheel being changed. Make sure all of the jack lift head is touching the jacking flange under the body. Do not place the jack under a body panel. The lower body panel has an arrow to aid in locating the jacking location.

6. Put the spare tire near you.

⚠ Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



7. Turn the wheel wrench or jack handle clockwise until the lifting head fits firmly into the appropriate notch and the tire is off the ground about 2.5 cm (1 in).

   Do not raise the vehicle more than is necessary to change the tire.

⚠ Warning

Getting under a vehicle when it is jacked up is dangerous. If the vehicle slips off the jack you could

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

be badly injured or killed. Never get under a vehicle when it is supported only by a jack.

⚠ Warning

Raising the vehicle with the jack improperly positioned can damage the vehicle and even make the vehicle fall. To help avoid personal injury and vehicle damage, be sure to fit the jack lift head into the proper location before raising the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Lifting a vehicle and getting under it to do maintenance or repairs is dangerous without the appropriate safety equipment and training. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, it is designed only for

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

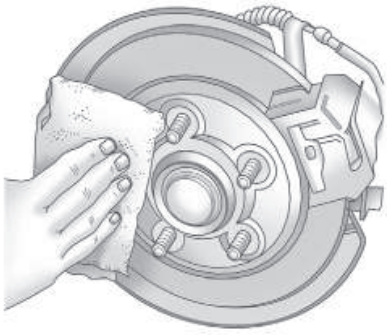
changing a flat tire. If it is used for anything else, you or others could be badly injured or killed if the vehicle slips off the jack. If a jack is provided with the vehicle, only use it for changing a flat tire.

Caution

Make sure that the jack lift head is in the correct position or you may damage your vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by your warranty.

8. Remove all the wheel nuts.
9. Remove the flat tire.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



10. Remove any rust or dirt from the wheel bolts, mounting surfaces and spare wheel.
11. Install the spare tire.

⚠ Warning

Rust or dirt on a wheel, or on the parts to which it is fastened, can make wheel nuts become loose after time. The wheel could come off and cause an accident. When changing a wheel, remove any rust or dirt from places where the wheel attaches to the vehicle. In

(Continued)

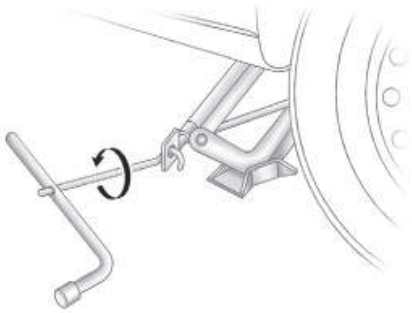
Warning (Continued)

an emergency, a cloth or a paper towel can be used; however, use a scraper or wire brush later to remove all rust or dirt.

12. Place the spare tire on the wheel-mounting surface.
13. Reinstall the wheel nuts. Tighten each nut by hand until the wheel is held against the hub.

⚠ Warning

Never use oil or grease on bolts or nuts because the nuts might come loose. The vehicle's wheel could fall off, causing a crash.



14. Turn the wheel wrench or jack handle counterclockwise to lower the vehicle.

⚠ Warning

Wheel nuts that are improperly or incorrectly tightened can cause the wheels to become loose or come off. The wheel nuts should be tightened with a torque wrench to the proper torque specification after replacing. Follow the torque specification supplied by the aftermarket manufacturer when using accessory locking wheel

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

nuts. *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *307* for original equipment wheel nut torque specifications.

Caution

Improperly tightened wheel nuts can lead to brake pulsation and rotor damage. To avoid expensive brake repairs, evenly tighten the wheel nuts in the proper sequence and to the proper torque specification. *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *307*.



15. Tighten the wheel nuts in a crisscross sequence, as shown. *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *307*.
16. Install the wheel cover if there is one.
17. Lower the jack all the way and remove it from under the vehicle.
18. Tighten the bolts firmly with the wheel wrench or jack handle.

Storing a Flat Tire and Tools

⚠ Warning

Storing a jack, a tire, or other equipment in the passenger compartment of the vehicle could cause injury. In a sudden stop or collision, loose equipment could strike someone. Store all these in the proper place.

1. Hang the tire carrier on the support rod and tighten the bolt in the hole above the rear bumper to raise the tire carrier. *Capacities and Specifications* ⇨ *307*.
2. Hook the cable and reinstall the hole cover in its original position.
3. Secure the jack and tools in their original location.
4. Secure the flat tire in the luggage compartment.

   Do not store the flat tire below the rear bumper where the spare tire was located.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

The compact spare, if equipped, is for temporary use only. Replace it with a full-size tire as soon as possible.

Compact Spare Tire

⚠ Warning

Driving with more than one compact spare tire at a time could result in loss of braking and handling. This could lead to a crash and you or others could be injured. Use only one compact spare tire at a time.

The compact spare tire was fully inflated when the vehicle was new, but it can lose air after a time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182* for the correct inflation pressure.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph) when driving with a spare tire.

The spare tire is for temporary emergency use only. Replace it with a regular tire as soon as possible.

Caution

When the compact spare is installed, do not take the vehicle through an automatic car wash with guide rails. The compact spare can get caught on the rails which can damage the tire, wheel, and other parts of the vehicle.

Do not use the temporary spare on other vehicles.

Do not mix the temporary spare tire or wheel with other wheels or tires. They will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Caution

Tire chains will not fit the compact spare. Using them can damage the vehicle and the chains. Do not use tire chains on the compact spare.

Full-Size Spare Tire

If this vehicle came with a full-size spare tire, it was fully inflated when new, however, it can lose air over time. Check the inflation pressure regularly. *Tire Pressure* ⇨ *261*, *Vehicle Load Limits* ⇨ *182*. For instructions on how to remove, install, or store a spare tire, *Tire Changing* ⇨ *274*.

Recommended spare tire maximum speed

- 17 inch : Up to 80 km/h (50 mph)
- 18, 19 inch : Up to 120 km/h (75 mph)

After installing the spare tire on the vehicle, stop as soon as possible and check that the spare is correctly inflated.

Have the damaged or flat road tire repaired or replaced and installed back onto the vehicle as soon as possible so the spare tire will be available in case it is needed again. Do not mix tires and wheels of different sizes, because they will not fit. Keep the spare tire and its wheel together.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Jump Starting

Battery ⇨ 245.

If the vehicle battery has run down, you may want to use another vehicle and some jumper cables to start the vehicle. Be sure to use the following steps to do it safely.

⚠ Warning

Batteries can hurt you. They can be dangerous because:

- They contain acid that can burn you.
- They contain gas that can explode or ignite.
- They contain enough electricity to burn you.

If you do not follow these steps exactly, some or all of these things can hurt you.

Caution

Ignoring these steps could result in costly damage to the vehicle that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Trying to start the vehicle by pushing or pulling it will not work, and it could damage the vehicle.

1. Check the other vehicle. It must have a 12-volt battery with a negative ground system.

Caution

If the other vehicle does not have a 12-volt system with a negative ground, both vehicles can be damaged. Only use a vehicle that has a 12-volt system with a negative ground for jump starting.

2. Get the vehicles close enough so the jumper cables can reach, but be sure the vehicles are not touching each other. If they are, it could cause a ground connection you do not want. You would not be able to start the vehicle, and the bad grounding could damage the electrical systems.

   To avoid the possibility of the vehicles rolling, set the parking brake firmly on both vehicles involved in the jump start procedure. Put the shift lever in P (Park) before setting the parking brake.

Caution

If any accessories are left on or plugged in during the jump starting procedure, they could be damaged. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Whenever possible, turn off or unplug all accessories on either vehicle when jump starting.

3. Turn off the ignition on both vehicles. Unplug unnecessary accessories plugged into the accessory power outlet. Turn off the radio and all lamps that

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

are not needed. This will avoid sparks, helping save both batteries and the radio.

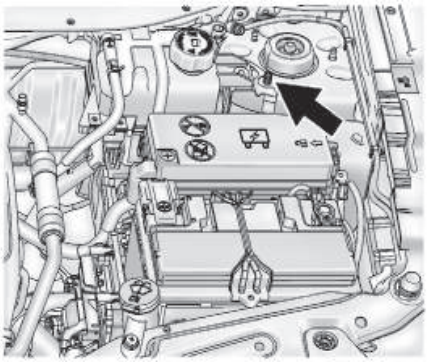
4. Open the hood on the other vehicle and locate the positive (+) and negative (−) terminal locations on that vehicle.

   Open the hood on your vehicle and find the remote positive and remote negative (−) jump starting terminals.



The vehicle is equipped with a remote positive (+) terminal. This is located in the engine compartment on the underhood fuse block. *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *229*.

To uncover the remote positive (+) terminal, press the tab on the bottom of the fuse block and lift the cover up.



The vehicle is equipped with a remote negative (−) terminal. This is a stud next to the engine coolant surge tank, located at the back of the engine compartment. *Engine Compartment Overview* ⇨ *229*.

⚠ Warning

An electric fan can start up even when the engine is not running and can injure you. Keep hands, clothing, and tools away from any underhood electric fan.

⚠ Warning

Using an open flame near a battery can cause battery gas to explode. People have been hurt doing this, and some have been blinded. Use a flashlight if you need more light.

Be sure the battery has enough water. You do not need to add water to the battery installed in your new vehicle. But if a battery has filler caps, be sure the right amount of fluid is there. If it is low, add water to take care of that first. If you do not, explosive gas could be present.

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Warning (Continued)

Battery fluid contains acid that can burn you. Do not get it on you. If you accidentally get it in your eyes or on your skin, flush the place with water and get medical help immediately.

⚠ Warning

Fans or other moving engine parts can injure you badly. Keep your hands away from moving parts once the engine is running.

5. Check that the jumper cables do not have loose or missing insulation. If they do, you could get a shock. The vehicles could also be damaged.

   Before you connect the cables, here are some basic things you should know. Positive (+) will go to positive (+) or to a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one. Negative (−) will go to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not connect positive (+) to negative (−) or you will get a short that would damage the battery and maybe other parts. Do not connect the negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal on the dead battery because this can cause sparks.

6. Connect the red positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

7. Do not let the other end touch metal. Connect it to the positive (+) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote positive (+) terminal if the vehicle has one.

8. Now connect the black negative (−) cable to the negative (−) terminal of the good battery. Use a remote negative (−) terminal if the vehicle has one.

   Do not let the other end touch anything until the next step. The other end of the negative (−) cable does not go to the dead battery. It goes to a heavy, unpainted metal engine part or to a remote negative (−) terminal on the vehicle with the dead battery.

9. Connect the other end of the negative (−) cable away from the dead battery, but not near engine parts that move. The electrical connection is just as good there, and the chance of sparks getting back to the battery is much less.

10. Now start the vehicle with the good battery and run the engine for a while.

11. Press the unlock symbol on the remote keyless entry transmitter to disarm your security system, if equipped.

12. Try to start the vehicle that had the dead battery. If it will not start after a few tries, it probably needs service.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution
If the jumper cables are connected or removed in the wrong order, electrical shorting may occur and damage the vehicle. The repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Always connect and remove the jumper cables in the correct order, making sure that the cables do not touch each other or other metal.

Jumper Cable Removal

Reverse the sequence exactly when removing the jumper cables.

Towing the Vehicle

Caution
Incorrectly towing a disabled vehicle may cause damage. The damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Have the vehicle towed on a flatbed car carrier. A wheel lift tow truck could damage the vehicle.

Consult your dealer or a professional towing service if the disabled vehicle must be towed.

Recreational Vehicle Towing

Recreational vehicle towing means towing the vehicle behind another vehicle such as behind a motor home. The two most common types of recreational vehicle towing are known as dinghy towing and dolly towing. Dinghy towing is towing the vehicle with all four wheels on the ground. Dolly towing is towing the vehicle with two wheels on the ground and two wheels up on a device known as a dolly.

Here are some important things to consider before recreational vehicle towing:

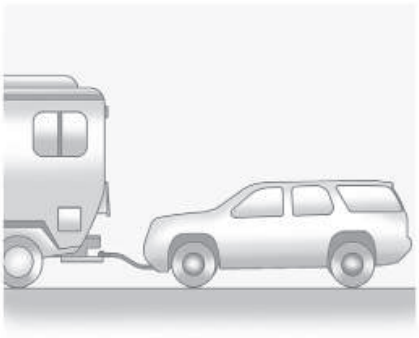
- What is the towing capacity of the towing vehicle? Be sure to read the tow vehicle manufacturer's recommendations.
- What is the distance that will be travelled? Some vehicles have restrictions on how far and how long they can tow.
- Is the proper towing equipment going to be used? See your dealer or trailering professional for additional advice and equipment recommendations.
- Is the vehicle ready to be towed? Just as preparing the vehicle for a long trip, make sure the vehicle is prepared to be towed.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Dinghy Towing

Front-wheel-drive and all-wheel-drive vehicles may be dinghy towed from the front. These vehicles can also be towed by placing them on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground. For other towing options, see “Dolly Towing” following in this section.

For vehicles being dinghy towed, the vehicle should be run at the beginning of each day and at each RV fuel stop for about five minutes. This will ensure proper lubrication of transmission components.



To tow the vehicle from the front with all four wheels on the ground:

1. Position the vehicle that will be towed.
2. Shift an automatic transmission to P (Park) or a manual transmission into 1 (First) and set the parking brake.
3. Secure the vehicle to the towing vehicle
4. Turn the ignition key to ACC/ ACCESSORY to unlock the steering wheel.
5. Shift an automatic transmission to N (Neutral) or a manual transmission to Neutral.
6. Turn off all accessories.
7. To prevent the battery from draining while the vehicle is being towed, remove the 2 amp IGN SW fuse from the instrument panel fuse block and store it in a safe location. *Instrument Panel Fuse Block* ⇨ *258*.
8. Release the parking brake.

Caution

If the vehicle is towed without performing each of the steps listed under “Dinghy Towing,” the automatic transmission could be damaged. Be sure to follow all steps of the dinghy towing procedure prior to and after towing the vehicle.

Caution

If 105 km/h (65 mph) is exceeded while towing the vehicle, it could be damaged. Never exceed 105 km/h (65 mph) while towing the vehicle.

Once the destination has been reached:

1. Set the parking brake.
2. Shift an automatic transmission to P (Park) or a manual transmission into 1 (First).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

3. Reinstall the 2 amp IGN SW fuse to the instrument panel fuse block.
4. Turn the ignition key to LOCK/OFF and remove the key from the ignition.

Caution

Too much or too little fluid can damage the transmission. Be sure that the transmission fluid is at the proper level before towing with all four wheels on the ground.

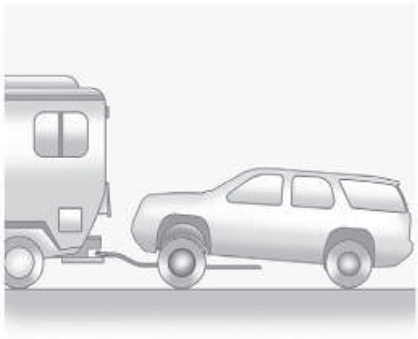
Caution

Do not tow a vehicle with the front drive wheels on the ground if one of the front tires is a compact spare tire. Towing with two different tire sizes on the front of the vehicle can cause severe damage to the transmission.

Dolly Towing (All-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)

All-wheel-drive vehicles should not be towed with two wheels on the ground. To properly tow these vehicles, they should be placed on a platform trailer with all four wheels off of the ground or dinghy towed from the front.

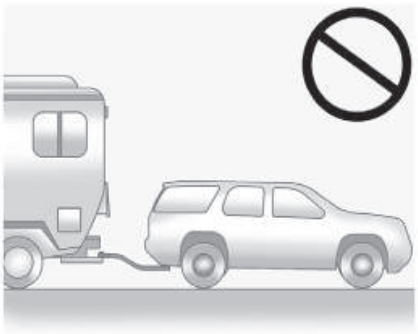
Dolly Towing (Front-Wheel-Drive Vehicles)



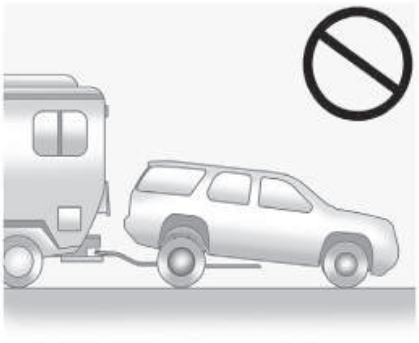
To tow the vehicle from the front with the rear wheels on the ground, do the following:

1. Put the front wheels on a dolly.
2. Shift an automatic transmission to P (Park) or a manual transmission into 1 (First).
3. Set the parking brake.
4. Clamp the steering wheel in a straight-ahead position with a clamping device designed for towing.
5. Remove the key from the ignition.
6. Secure the vehicle to the dolly.
7. Release the parking brake.

Towing the Vehicle From the Rear



Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine



Caution

Towing the vehicle from the rear could damage it. Also, repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Never have the vehicle towed from the rear.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

Locks

Locks are lubricated at the factory. Use a de-icing agent only when absolutely necessary, and have the locks greased after using. *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants ⇨ 301*.

Washing the Vehicle

To preserve the vehicle's finish, wash it often and out of direct sunlight.

Caution

Do not use petroleum-based, acidic, or abrasive cleaning agents as they can damage the vehicle's paint, metal, or plastic parts. If damage occurs, it would not be covered by the vehicle warranty. Approved cleaning products can be obtained from

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

your dealer. Follow all manufacturer directions regarding correct product usage, necessary safety precautions, and appropriate disposal of any vehicle care product.

Caution

Avoid using high-pressure washes closer than 30 cm (12 in) to the surface of the vehicle. Use of power washers exceeding 8,274 kPa (1,200 psi) can result in damage or removal of paint and decals.

The  symbol is on any underhood compartment electrical center that should not be power washed. This could cause damage that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If using an automatic car wash, follow the car wash instructions. The windshield wiper and rear window wiper, if equipped, must be off. Remove any accessories that may be damaged or interfere with the car wash equipment.

Rinse the vehicle well, before washing and after, to remove all cleaning agents completely. If they are allowed to dry on the surface, they could stain.

Dry the finish with a soft, clean chamois or an all-cotton towel to avoid surface scratches and water spotting.

Finish Care

Application of aftermarket clearcoat sealant/wax materials is not recommended. If painted surfaces are damaged, see your dealer to have the damage assessed and repaired. Foreign materials such as calcium chloride and other salts, ice melting agents, road oil and tar, tree sap, bird droppings, chemicals from industrial chimneys, etc., can damage the vehicle's finish if they remain on painted surfaces. Wash the vehicle as soon as possible. If necessary, use non-abrasive cleaners that are marked safe for painted surfaces to remove foreign matter.

Occasional hand waxing or mild polishing should be done to remove residue from the paint finish. See your dealer for approved cleaning products.

Do not apply waxes or polishes to uncoated plastic, vinyl, rubber, decals, simulated wood, or flat paint as damage can occur.

Caution

Machine compounding or aggressive polishing on a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish may damage it. Use only non-abrasive waxes and polishes that are made for a basecoat/clearcoat paint finish on the vehicle.

To keep the paint finish looking new, keep the vehicle garaged or covered whenever possible.

Protecting Exterior Bright Metal Moldings

Caution

Failure to clean and protect the bright metal moldings can result in a hazy white finish or pitting. This damage would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

The bright metal moldings on the vehicle are aluminum. To prevent damage always follow these cleaning instructions:

- Be sure the molding is cool to the touch before applying any cleaning solution.
- Use a cleaning solution approved for aluminum. Some cleaners are highly acidic or contain alkaline substances and can damage the moldings.
- Always dilute a concentrated cleaner according to the manufacturer’s instructions.
- Do not use chrome cleaners.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not use cleaners that are not intended for automotive use.
- Use a nonabrasive wax on the vehicle after washing to protect and extend the molding finish.

Cleaning Exterior Lamps/ Lenses, Emblems, Decals and Stripes

Use only lukewarm or cold water, a soft cloth, and a car washing soap to clean exterior lamps, lenses, emblems, decals and stripes. Follow instructions under "Washing the Vehicle" previously in this section.

Lamp covers are made of plastic, and some have a UV protective coating.

Use only lukewarm water, a soft cloth, and mild car washing soap to clean exterior lamps and lenses. Do not clean or wipe them while they are dry.

Do not use any of the following on lamp covers:

- Abrasive or caustic agents.
- Washer fluids and other cleaning agents in higher concentrations than suggested by the manufacturer.
- Solvents, alcohols, fuels, or other harsh cleaners.
- Ice scrapers or other hard items.
- Aftermarket appearance caps or covers while the lamps are illuminated, due to excessive heat generated.

Caution

Failure to clean lamps properly can cause damage to the lamp cover that would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Caution

Using wax on low gloss black finish stripes can increase the gloss level and create a non-uniform finish. Clean low gloss stripes with soap and water only.

Air Intakes

Clear debris from the air intakes, between the hood and windshield when washing the vehicle.

Windshield and Wiper Blades

Clean the outside of the windshield with glass cleaner.

Clean rubber blades using a lint-free cloth or paper towel soaked with windshield washer fluid or a mild detergent. Wash the windshield thoroughly when cleaning the blades. Bugs, road grime, sap, and a buildup of vehicle wash/wax treatments may cause wiper streaking.

Replace the wiper blades if they are worn or damaged. Damage can be caused by extreme dusty conditions, sand, salt, heat, sun, snow, and ice.

Weatherstrips

Apply Dielectric silicone grease on weatherstrips to make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak. Lubricate weatherstrips at least once a year. Hot, dry climates

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

may require more frequent application. Black marks from rubber material on painted surfaces can be removed by rubbing with a clean cloth. *Recommended Fluids and Lubricants* ⇨ *301*.

Tires

Use a stiff brush with tire cleaner to clean the tires.

Caution

Using petroleum-based tire dressing products on the vehicle may damage the paint finish and/or tires. When applying a tire dressing, always wipe off any overspray from all painted surfaces on the vehicle.

Wheels and Trim — Aluminum or Chrome

Use a soft, clean cloth with mild soap and water to clean the wheels. After rinsing thoroughly with clean water, dry with a soft, clean towel. A wax may then be applied.

Caution

Chrome wheels and other chrome trim may be damaged if the vehicle is not washed after driving on roads that have been sprayed with magnesium, calcium, or sodium chloride. These chlorides are used on roads for conditions such as ice and dust. Always wash the chrome with soap and water after exposure.

Caution

To avoid surface damage, do not use strong soaps, chemicals, abrasive polishes, cleaners, brushes, or cleaners that contain acid on aluminum or chrome-plated wheels. Use only approved cleaners. Also, never drive a vehicle with aluminum or chrome-plated wheels through an automatic car wash that uses silicone carbide tire cleaning

(Continued)

Caution (Continued)

brushes. Damage could occur and the repairs would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Steering, Suspension, and Chassis Components

Visually inspect steering, suspension, and chassis components for damaged, loose, or missing parts or signs of wear at least once a year.

Inspect power steering for proper hook-up, binding, leaks, cracks, chafing, etc.

Visually check constant velocity joint boots and axle seals for leaks.

Body Component Lubrication

Lubricate all key lock cylinders, hood hinges, liftgate hinges, and the fuel door hinge unless the components are plastic. Applying silicone grease on weatherstrips with a clean cloth will make them last longer, seal better, and not stick or squeak.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Underbody Maintenance

At least twice a year, Spring and Fall, use plain water to flush dirt and debris from the vehicle's underbody. Your dealer or an underbody car washing system can do this. If not removed, rust and corrosion can develop.

Sheet Metal Damage

If the vehicle is damaged and requires sheet metal repair or replacement, make sure the body repair shop applies anti-corrosion material to parts repaired or replaced to restore corrosion protection.

Original manufacturer replacement parts will provide the corrosion protection while maintaining the vehicle warranty.

Finish Damage

Quickly repair minor chips and scratches with touch-up materials available from your dealer to avoid corrosion. Larger areas of finish damage can be corrected in your dealer's body and paint shop.

Chemical Paint Spotting

Airborne pollutants can fall upon and attack painted vehicle surfaces causing blotchy, ring-shaped discolorations, and small, irregular dark spots etched into the paint surface. See “Finish Care” previously in this section.

Interior Care

To prevent dirt particle abrasions, regularly clean the vehicle's interior. Immediately remove any soils. Note that newspapers or dark garments that can transfer color to home furnishings can also permanently transfer color to the vehicle's interior.

Use a soft bristle brush to remove dust from knobs and crevices on the instrument cluster. Using a mild soap solution, immediately remove hand lotions, sunscreen, and insect repellent from all interior surfaces or permanent damage may result.

Your dealer may have products for cleaning the interior. Use cleaners specifically designed for the surfaces being cleaned to prevent permanent damage. Apply all cleaners directly to the cleaning cloth. Do not spray cleaners directly on any switches or controls. Cleaners should be removed quickly. Never allow cleaners to remain on the surface being cleaned for extended periods of time.

Cleaners may contain solvents that can become concentrated in the interior. Before using cleaners, read and adhere to all safety instructions on the label. While cleaning the interior, maintain adequate ventilation by opening the doors and windows.

To prevent damage, do not clean the interior using the following cleaners or techniques:

- Never use a razor or any other sharp object to remove a soil from any interior surface.
- Never use a brush with stiff bristles.
- Never rub any surface aggressively or with excessive pressure.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Do not use laundry detergents or dishwashing soaps with degreasers. For liquid cleaners, use approximately 20 drops per 3.8 L (1 gal) of water.
  A concentrated soap solution will leave a residue that creates streaks and attracts dirt. Do not use solutions that contain strong or caustic soap.
- Do not heavily saturate the upholstery when cleaning.
- Do not use solvents or cleaners containing solvents.

Interior Glass

To clean, use a terry cloth fabric dampened with water. Wipe droplets left behind with a clean dry cloth. Commercial glass cleaners may be used, if necessary, after cleaning the interior glass with plain water.

Caution

To prevent scratching, never use abrasive cleaners on automotive glass. Abrasive cleaners or aggressive cleaning may damage the rear window defogger.

Cleaning the windshield with water during the first three to six months of ownership will reduce tendency to fog.

Speaker Covers

Vacuum around a speaker cover gently, so that the speaker will not be damaged. Clean spots with just water and mild soap.

Coated Moldings

Coated moldings should be cleaned.

- When lightly soiled, wipe with a sponge or soft lint-free cloth dampened with water.
- When heavily soiled, use warm soapy water.

Fabric/Carpet/Suede

Start by vacuuming the surface using a soft brush attachment. If a rotating brush attachment is being used during vacuuming, only use it on the floor carpet. Before cleaning, gently remove as much of the soil as possible using one of the following techniques:

- Gently blot liquids with a paper towel. Continue blotting until no more soil can be removed.
- For solid soils, remove as much as possible prior to vacuuming.

To clean:

1. Saturate a clean lint-free colorfast cloth with water. Microfiber cloth is recommended to prevent lint transfer to the fabric or carpet.
2. Remove excess moisture by gently wringing until water does not drip from the cleaning cloth.
3. Start on the outside edge of the soil and gently rub toward the center. Fold the cleaning cloth

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

to a clean area frequently to prevent forcing the soil in to the fabric.

4. Continue gently rubbing the soiled area until there is no longer any color transfer from the soil to the cleaning cloth.
5. If the soil is not completely removed, use a mild soap solution followed only by plain water.

If the soil is not completely removed, it may be necessary to use a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. Test a small hidden area for colorfastness before using a commercial upholstery cleaner or spot lifter. If ring formation occurs, clean the entire fabric or carpet.

Following the cleaning process, a paper towel can be used to blot excess moisture.

Cleaning High Gloss Surfaces and Vehicle Information and Radio Displays

For vehicles with high gloss surfaces or vehicle displays, use a microfiber cloth to wipe surfaces. Before wiping the surface with the microfiber cloth, use a soft bristle brush to remove dirt that could scratch the surface. Then use the microfiber cloth by gently rubbing to clean. Never use window cleaners or solvents. Periodically hand wash the microfiber cloth separately, using mild soap. Do not use bleach or fabric softener. Rinse thoroughly and air dry before next use.

Caution

Do not attach a device with a suction cup to the display. This may cause damage and would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Instrument Panel, Leather, Vinyl, Other Plastic Surfaces, Low Gloss Paint Surfaces and Natural Open Pore Wood Surfaces

Use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with water to remove dust and loose dirt. For a more thorough cleaning, use a soft microfiber cloth dampened with a mild soap solution.

Caution

Soaking or saturating leather, especially perforated leather, as well as other interior surfaces, may cause permanent damage. Wipe excess moisture from these surfaces after cleaning and allow them to dry naturally. Never use heat, steam, or spot removers. Do not use cleaners that contain silicone or wax-based products. Cleaners containing these solvents can permanently change

(Continued)

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Caution (Continued)

the appearance and feel of leather or soft trim, and are not recommended.

Do not use cleaners that increase gloss, especially on the instrument panel. Reflected glare can decrease visibility through the windshield under certain conditions.

Caution

Use of air fresheners may cause permanent damage to plastics and painted surfaces. If an air freshener comes in contact with any plastic or painted surface in the vehicle, blot immediately and clean with a soft cloth dampened with a mild soap solution. Damage caused by air fresheners would not be covered by the vehicle warranty.

Cargo Cover and Convenience Net

Wash with warm water and mild detergent. Do not use chlorine bleach. Rinse with cold water, and then dry completely.

Care of Safety Belts

Keep belts clean and dry.

⚠ Warning

Do not bleach or dye safety belts. It may severely weaken them. In a crash, they might not be able to provide adequate protection. Clean safety belts only with mild soap and lukewarm water.

Floor Mats

⚠ Warning

If a floor mat is the wrong size or is not properly installed, it can interfere with the pedals. Interference with the pedals can

(Continued)

Warning (Continued)

cause unintended acceleration and/or increased stopping distance which can cause a crash and injury. Make sure the floor mat does not interfere with the pedals.

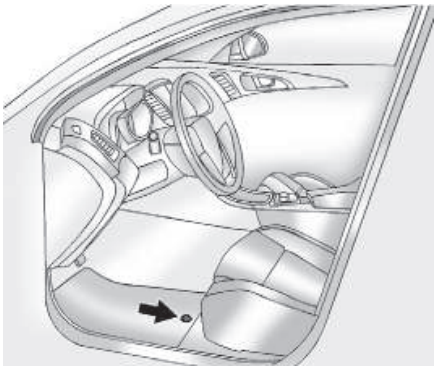
Use the following guidelines for proper floor mat usage.

- The original equipment floor mats were designed for your vehicle. If the floor mats need replacing, it is recommended that GM certified floor mats be purchased. Non-GM floor mats may not fit properly and may interfere with the accelerator or brake pedal. Always check that the floor mats do not interfere with the pedals.
- Use the floor mat with the correct side up. Do not turn it over.
- Do not place anything on top of the driver side floor mat.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

- Use only a single floor mat on the driver side.
- Do not place one floor mat on top of another.

The driver side floor mat is held in place by a button-type retainer.



Removing and Replacing the Floor Mats

1. Pull up on the rear of the floor mat to unlock the retainer and remove.
2. Reinstall by lining up the floor mat retainer opening over the carpet retainer and snap into position.
3. Make sure the floor mat is properly secured and verify that it does not interfere with the pedals.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Service and Maintenance

General Information
Service Information 296

Scheduled Maintenance
Scheduled Maintenance 296

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 301

General Information

Service Information

In order to ensure economical and safe vehicle operation and to maintain the value of your vehicle, it is of vital importance that all maintenance work is carried out at the proper intervals as specified.

Confirmations

Confirmation of service is recorded in the Service Guide.

The date and mileage is completed with the stamp and signature of the servicing repairer.

Make sure that the Service Guide is completed correctly as continuous proof of service is essential if any warranty or goodwill claims are to be met, and is also a benefit when selling the vehicle.

Scheduled Maintenance

● : Replace or change.

○ : Inspect these items and their related parts. If necessary, correct, clean, replenish, adjust or replace.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Kilometers (miles) or time in months, which comes first

Service operations	by year		1	2	3	4
	km (x 1,000)		15	30	45	60
	miles (x 1,000)		10	20	30	40
ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM						
Drive belt			Inspect every 240,000 km or 10 years			
Engine oil & engine oil filter (1)	with OLM*		Replace every 1 year or 'change engine oil' lamp on			
	without OLM		Replace every 1 year or 15,000 km			
Cooling system hose & connections			○	○	○	○
Engine Coolant (2)			○	○	○	○
Fuel filter	Gasoline (3) (only external filter)	China	Replace 40,000 km or 2 years, whichever comes first.			
		ASEAN Member (4)	Replace 40,000 km or 2 years, whichever comes first. If any of these countries have standard maintenance interval of 15,000 km, then change the filter at 45,000 km			
	Diesel (5)	ASEAN Member (6)	Replace 40,000 km or 2 years, whichever comes first. If any of these countries have standard maintenance interval of 15,000 km, then change the filter at 45,000 km			
		Africa	Replace 20,000 km or 1 year, whichever comes first.			
Fuel line & connections			○	○	○	○

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Kilometers (miles) or time in months, which comes first (cont'd)

Service operations	by year	1	2	3	4
	km (x 1,000)	15	30	45	60
	miles (x 1,000)	10	20	30	40
Air cleaner element (7)	Except China, Middle East and India	○	○	○	●
	China	○	●	○	●
	Middle East & India	●	●	●	●
Spark plugs		Replace every 160,000 km			
Evaporative emission canister & vapour lines				○	
Air filter (A/C) (8)		●	●	●	●
Exhaust pipe & mounting		○	○	○	○
Brake/clutch fluid (9)		Replace every 2 years			
Front brake pads & discs (10)		○	○	○	○
Rear brake pads & discs (10)		○	○	○	○
Parking brake		○	○	○	○
Brake line & connections (including booster)		○	○	○	○
Manual transaxle, transfer case, rear differential : leak check		○	○	○	○
Chassis and underbody bolts & nuts tight/secure		○	○	○	○

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Kilometers (miles) or time in months, which comes first (cont'd)

Service operations	by year	1	2	3	4
	km (x 1,000)	15	30	45	60
	miles (x 1,000)	10	20	30	40
Automatic transaxle fluid (11) (12)		See the remark (11) (12) below			
Tyre condition & inflation pressure (13)		See the remark (13) below			
Tire Rotation		Tires should be rotated every 12,000 km(7,500 mi).			
Wheel alignment (14)		Inspect when abnormal condition is noted			
Steering wheel and linkage		○	○	○	○
Power steering fluid & lines		○	○	○	○
Drive shaft boots		○	○	○	○
Lubricate locks, hinges & hood latch		○	○	○	○

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Kilometers (miles) or time in months, which comes first (cont'd)

Service operations	by year	1	2	3	4
	km (x 1,000)	15	30	45	60
	miles (x 1,000)	10	20	30	40

(1) If a vehicle without OLM is operated under severe conditions: short distance driving, extensive idling or driving in dusty conditions, change engine oil and the filter every 6 months or 7,500 km
(2) Replace every 240,000 km or 5 years.
(3) The external gasoline fuel filter may need to be replaced more frequently, if driving in severe dust climate or off-road driving or towing a trailer for extended periods.
(4) ASEAN Member countries: Thailand, Laos, Vietnam
(5) The diesel fuel filter cartridge may need to be replaced more frequently, based on biodiesel usage, driving in severe dust climate or off-road driving or towing a trailer for extended periods.
(6) ASEAN Member countries: Thailand, Laos
(7) Inspect every 7,500 km or 6 months if under dusty driving condition. If necessary, correct, clean, or replace.
(8) More frequent maintenance is required if under dusty driving conditions.
(9) Change the brake fluid every 15,000 km or 1 year if the vehicle is mainly driven under severe conditions:
- Driving in hilly or mountainous terrain, or
- Towing a trailer frequently.
(10) More frequent maintenance is required if under severe conditions : short distance driving, extensive idling, frequent low-speed operation in stop and go traffic or driving in dusty conditions.
(11) Replace every 160,000 km for normal conditions and every 80,000 km for severe conditions.
(12) Inspection is not required. A fluid inspection is only required if there is a transmission failure or a fluid leak.
(13) Tire condition should be inspected before driving and tire pressure should be checked each time you fill your fuel tank or at least once a month using a tire pressure gauge.
(14) If necessary, rotate and balance wheels.

* OLM : Oil Life Monitoring

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended Fluids, Lubricants, and Parts

Recommended Fluids and Lubricants

Only use products that have been tested and approved. Damage resulting from the use of nonapproved materials will not be covered by the warranty.

⚠ Warning

Operating materials are hazardous and could be poisonous. Handle with care. Pay attention to information given on the containers.

Engine Oil

Engine Oil is identified by its Quality and its Viscosity Grade. "Quality" and "Specification" are equivalent terms in this respect. Engine Oil Quality is more important than Viscosity when selecting which Engine Oil to use. The Oil Quality ensures e.g. engine cleanliness, wear protection and oil aging control, whereas Viscosity Grade gives information on the oil's thickness over a temperature range.

Engine Oil Quality for Service

Gasoline: dexos 1™

Diesel: dexos 2™

Selecting the right Engine Oil

Selecting the right Engine Oil depends on the proper Oil Specification and SAE Viscosity Grade.

Use and ask for Engine Oils with the dexos™ Certification Logo. Oils meeting the requirements of your vehicle should have the dexos™ Certification Logo on the container.

dexos 1™ APPROVED

dexos 2™

Your vehicle's Engine was filled at the factory with dexos™ approved Engine Oil.

Use only Engine Oil that is approved to the dexos™ Specification or an equivalent Engine Oil of the appropriate Viscosity Grade. Failure to use the recommended Engine Oil or equivalent can result in engine damage not covered by the vehicle warranty.

If you are unsure whether your oil is approved to the dexos™ Specification, ask your service provider.

Topping up Engine Oil

Engine Oils of different manufacturers and brands can be mixed as long as they comply with the required Engine Oil (Quality and Viscosity).

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

If Engine Oil of the required Quality is not available, a maximum of 1 Litre ACEA A3/B3(Gasoline) ACEA A3/B4 or ACEA C3(Diesel) may be used (only once between each oil change).

The Viscosity should be of the correct rating.

Use of Engine Oil with only ACEA A1/B1 or only ACEA A5/B5 Quality is prohibited, as it can cause long term engine damage under certain operating conditions.

Engine Oil Additives

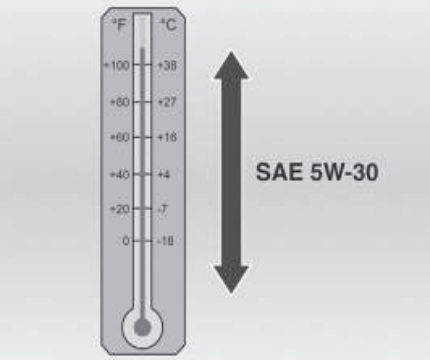
The use of supplemental Engine Oil Additives could cause damage and invalidate the warranty.

Engine Oil Viscosity Grades

The SAE Viscosity Grade gives information of the thickness of the Oil.

Multigrade Oil is indicated by two figures:

The first figure, followed by a W, indicates the low temperature Viscosity and the second figure indicates the high temperature Viscosity.



SAE 5W-30 is the best Viscosity Grade for your vehicle. Do not use other Viscosity Grade Oils such as SAE 10W-30, 10W-40 or 20W-50.

Cold temperature operation:

If operating your vehicle in an area of extreme cold, where the temperature falls below -25 °C, a Viscosity Grade SAE 0W-xx should be used. An Oil of this Viscosity Grade will provide easier cold starting for the engine at extremely low temperatures.

When selecting an Oil of the appropriate Viscosity Grade be sure to always select an Oil that meets the dexos™, Specification.

- Down to -25 °C : 5W-30, 5W-40.
- Down to -25 °C and below : 0W-30, 0W-40.

The SAE viscosity grade gives information of the thickness of the oil.

Coolant and antifreeze

Use only organic acid type-long life coolant (LLC) antifreeze.

In countries with moderate climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -35 °C.

In countries with cold climate the coolant provides freeze protection down to approx. -50 °C. This concentration should be maintained all year-round.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Maintain a sufficient concentration of anti-freeze.

Coolant additives intended to give additional corrosion protection or seal against minor leaks can cause function problems. Liability for consequences resulting from the use of coolant additives will be rejected.

Brake fluid

Only use our authorised brake fluid for this vehicle(DOT 4).

Over time, brake fluid absorbs moisture which will reduce braking effectiveness. The brake fluid should therefore be replaced at the specified interval.

Brake fluid should be stored in a sealed container to avoid water absorption.

Ensure brake fluid does not become contaminated.

Power steering fluid

Only use Dexron VI fluid.

Manual transmission fluid

Only use Castrol BOT 303 fluid.

Automatic transmission fluid

Only use Dexron VI fluid.

Transfer case fluid (AWD)

Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.

Differential carrier assembly fluid (AWD)

Only use synthetic hypoid 75W-90 fluid.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Technical Data

Vehicle Identification
Identification Plate 304

Vehicle Data
Engine Data 305
Performance 305
Curb Weight 306
Vehicle Dimensions 306
Capacities and Specifications 307
Tire Pressure 307

Vehicle Identification

Identification Plate

The technical data is determined in accordance with European Community standards. We reserve the right to make modifications. Specifications in the vehicle documents always have priority over those given in this manual. The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is on the vehicle identification plate. The vehicle identification plate also lists, in kilograms, the Gross Vehicle Mass (GVM), the Gross Combination Mass (GCM) and the maximum front and rear axle loads respectively. Observe these limits when using the full load or towing capacity of the vehicle.



The identification plate is on the passenger door opening area.

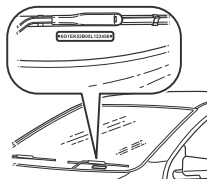
Information on identification plate:

- Manufacturer
- Vehicle Identification Number
- Permissible Gross Vehicle Mass
- Gross Combination Mass
- Maximum permissible front axle load
- Maximum permissible rear axle load



The vehicle identification number (VIN) is engraved on the fire wall.

The Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is also engraved on the top right-hand side of the bulkhead near the center of the engine firewall. Engine identifier code and engine number are stamped on the cylinder block under the engine exhaust manifold (diesel engines) or the intake manifold (petrol engines).



The vehicle identification number (ISOVIN), is also shown behind the windscreen on the left side.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Vehicle Data

Engine Data

Engine	2.4D	3.0 D	2.0 DSL	2.2 DSL (163PS)	2.2 DSL (184PS)
Number of cylinders	4	6	4	4	4
Displacement [cc]	2384	2997	1998	2231	2231
Output [kW] at rpm	123 at 5600	190 at 6900	120 at 3800	120 at 3800	135 at 3800
Max. torque [Nm] at rpm	230 at 4600	288 at 5800	400 at 1750~2250	350 at 1500~3000	400 at 1750~2750
Fuel type	Petrol		Diesel		

Performance

Top speed

	2.4D	3.0 D	2.0 DSL	2.2 DSL (163PS)	2.2 DSL (184PS)
Manual transaxle (km/h)	190 (FWD)	-	-	189 (FWD)	200
	186 (AWD)			184 (AWD)	
Automatic transaxle (km/h)	175	198	187	188 (FWD)	191
				182 (AWD)	

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Curb Weight

With driver (75kg)

		2.4D 5seat	2.4D 7seat	3.0D 5seat	3.0D 7seat	2.0 DSL 7 seat	2.2 DSL 5 seat	2.2 DSL 7 seat
Front wheel drive (kg)	MT	1768~ 1848	1793~ 1873	-	-	-	1853~ 1933	1878~ 1958
	AT	-	-	-	-	1978~ 2058	1878~ 1958	1903~ 1983
All wheel drive (kg)	MT	1843~ 1923	1848~ 1948	-	-	-	1928~ 2008	1953~ 2033
	AT	1868~ 1948	1893~ 1973	1890~ 1970	1915~ 1995	-	1953~ 2033	1978~ 2058

Vehicle Dimensions

Length [mm]	4673
Width [mm]	1849
Height (with roof rack) [mm]	1756
Wheel base [mm]	2707
Track (Front) [mm]	1569
Track (Rear) [mm]	1576
Minimum turning radius [m]	11.87

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Capacities and Specifications

Engine	2.4 D	3.0 D	DIESEL
Fuel tank [L]	65		
Engine oil [L]	4.7	5.7	5.4

Tire Pressure

Tyre size	Wheel dimension	Pressure (psi/bar/kPa)	
		Front	Rear
235/60R17	17x7J	Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240 (Eco. pressure : 38/2.6/260) Above 5 occupants, with towing trailer : 35/2.4/240	Below 4 occupants : 35/2.4/240 (Eco. pressure : 38/2.6/260) Above 5 occupants, with towing trailer : 41/2.8/280
235/55R18	18x7J		
235/50R19	19x7J		
215/70R16 (spare)	16X6.5J	35/2.4/240	35/2.4/240
T155/90R16 (spare)	16X4T	60/4.2/420	60/4.2/420

Octane Rating RON For Petrol Engines

Octane Rating

RON	Country
95	**Recommended** for coastal regions. Compatible for inland regions.
93	**Recommended** for inland regions. Compatible for coastal regions.

Note:

Coastal is up to 800m above sea level, inland is greater than 800m above sea level.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Customer Information

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 308
Event Data Recorders 308
Radio Frequency Identification (RFID) 309

Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy

The vehicle has a number of computers that record information about the vehicle's performance and how it is driven. For example, the vehicle uses computer modules to monitor and control engine and transmission performance, to monitor the conditions for airbag deployment and deploy them in a crash, and, if equipped, to provide antilock braking to help the driver control the vehicle. These modules may store data to help the dealer technician service the vehicle. Some modules may also store data about how the vehicle is operated, such as rate of fuel consumption or average speed. These modules may retain personal preferences, such as radio presets, seat positions, and temperature settings.

Event Data Recorders

This vehicle has an event data recorder (EDR). The main purpose of an EDR is to record, in certain crash or near crash-like situations, such as an airbag deployment or hitting a road obstacle, data that will assist in understanding how a vehicle's systems performed. The EDR is designed to record data related to vehicle dynamics and safety systems for a short period of time, typically 30 seconds or less. The EDR in this vehicle may record such data as:

- How various systems in the vehicle were operating.
- Whether or not the driver and passenger safety belts were buckled/fastened.
- How far, if at all, the driver was pressing the accelerator and/or brake pedal.
- How fast the vehicle was traveling.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

These data can help provide a better understanding of the circumstances in which crashes and injuries occur.

Important: EDR data are recorded by the vehicle only if a non-trivial crash situation occurs; no data are recorded by the EDR under normal driving conditions and no personal data (e.g., name, gender, age, and crash location) are recorded. However, other parties, such as law enforcement, could combine the EDR data with the type of personally identifying data routinely acquired during a crash investigation.

To read data recorded by an EDR, special equipment is required, and access to the vehicle or the EDR is needed. In addition to the vehicle manufacturer, other parties, such as law enforcement, that have the special equipment, can read the information if they have access to the vehicle or the EDR.

GM will not access these data or share it with others except: with the consent of the vehicle owner or, if the vehicle is leased, with the consent of the lessee; in response to an official request of police or similar government office; as part of GM's defense of litigation through the discovery process; or, as required by law. Data that GM collects or receives may also be used for GM research needs or may be made available to others for research purposes, where a need is shown and the data is not tied to a specific vehicle or vehicle owner.

Radio Frequency Identification (RFID)

RFID technology is used in some vehicles for functions such as tire pressure monitoring and ignition system security, as well as in connection with conveniences such as Remote Keyless Entry (RKE) transmitters for remote door locking/unlocking and starting, and in-vehicle transmitters for garage door openers. RFID technology in GM vehicles does not use or record personal information or link with any other GM system containing personal information.

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Index

A

Accessories and Modifications 227
Accessory Power 191
Add-On Electrical Equipment ... 225
Adjustments
  Lumbar, Front Seats 48
Air Cleaner/Filter, Engine 240
Air Filter, Passenger Compartment 172
Air Vents 171
Airbag System
  Check 71
  How Does an Airbag Restrain? 67
  What Makes an Airbag Inflate? 67
  What Will You See after an Airbag Inflates? 67
  When Should an Airbag Inflate? 66
  Where Are the Airbags? 65
Airbags
  Adding Equipment to the Vehicle 70
  Light On-Off 103
  On-Off Light 103
  On-Off Switch 68
Airbags (cont'd)
  Readiness Light 102
  Servicing Airbag-Equipped Vehicles 70
  System Check 63
Alarm
  Vehicle Security 35
Alarm System
  Anti-theft 36
Alert
  Side Blind Zone (SBZA) 212
All-Wheel Drive 200
  Light 108
AM-FM Radio 137
Antenna
  Fixed Mast 140
  Multi-band 141
Anti-theft
  Alarm System 36
Antilock Brake System (ABS) ... 201
  Warning Light 107
Appearance Care
  Exterior 287
  Interior 291
Audio
  Bluetooth 148
  Theft-Deterrent Feature 131

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Automatic
Door Locks 32
Engine Start/Stop Feature 191
Headlamp System 124
Level Control 206
Transmission 196
Transmission Fluid 239
Automatic Transmission
Manual Mode 198
Auxiliary Devices 147

B

Battery 245
Jump Starting..... 281
Power Protection 127
Blade Replacement, Wiper 247
Bluetooth
Overview 151
Bluetooth Audio 148
Brake
System Warning Light 106
Brakes
Antilock..... 201
Assist..... 203
Fluid 244
Parking 201
System Messages 116
Braking 176
Break-In, New Vehicle 185
Bulb Replacement 252
Center High-Mounted
Stoplamp (CHMSL) 252
Fog Lamps 250
Halogen Bulbs 249
Headlamp Aiming..... 248
Headlamps 249
Headlamps, Front Turn
Signal, and Parking
Lamps 249
License Plate Lamps 252
Side Turn Signal Lamps 252
Taillamps, Turn Signal,
Stoplamps, and Back-up
Lamps 251
Buying New Tires 264

C

Camera
Rear Vision (RVC)..... 209
Capacities and
Specifications 307
Carbon Monoxide
Engine Exhaust..... 194
Liftgate 33
Winter Driving 180
Cargo
Cover.....88
Management System 88
Caution, Danger, and Warning 2
Center Console Storage 87
Center High-Mounted
Stoplamp (CHMSL) 252
Chains, Tire 266
Charging System Light 104
Check
Malfunction Indicator
Engine Light 104
Child Restraints
Infants and Young Children 73
Lower Anchors and Tethers
for Children 78
Older Children 72
Securing 83, 85
Systems 75
Circuit Breakers 253
Cleaning
Exterior Care 287
Interior Care 291
Climate Control Systems 165
Air Conditioning 165
Dual Automatic 167
Heating 165
Rear 170
Cluster, Instrument 98
Compact Spare Tire 280

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Compartments
Storage 86
Compressor Kit, Tire Sealant ...268
Computer, Trip 117
Continuous Damping
Control (CDC) 206
Control
Traction and Electronic
Stability 204
Control of a Vehicle 176
Convenience Net 88
Convex Mirrors 39
Coolant
Engine 240
Engine Temperature
Warning Light 110
Cover
Cargo 88
Cruise Control 207
Light 116
Cupholders 86
Curb Weight 306

D

Danger, Warning, and Caution 2
Data Recorders, Event 308
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 123
Defensive Driving 176
Descent Control
System (DCS) 205
Descent Control System
Light 108
Devices
Auxiliary 147
Diesel Fuel Filter 247
Diesel Particulate Filter 195
Diesel Particulate Filter Light ... 111
Differential, Limited-Slip 206
Dimensions
Vehicle 306
Distracted Driving 175
Dome Lamps 126
Door
Ajar Light 116
Locks 31
Power Locks 32
Drive Systems
All-Wheel Drive 200
Driving
Characteristics and
Towing Tips 218
Defensive 176
For Better Fuel Economy 24
Highway Hypnosis 179
Hill and Mountain Roads 179
If the Vehicle is Stuck 181
Driving (cont'd)
Loss of Control 177
Off-Road Recovery 177
Vehicle Load Limits 182
Wet Roads 178
Winter 180
Dual Automatic Climate
Control System 167

E

ECO Button 198
Economy Mode
Fuel 198
Electric Parking Brake Light 107
Electrical Equipment,
Add-On 225
Electrical System
Engine Compartment Fuse
Block 254
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 253
Instrument Panel Fuse
Block 258
Overload 253
Electronic Stability Control
(ESC) Off Light 109
Electronic Stability Control
Indicator Light 109
Engine
Air Cleaner/Filter 240

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Engine (cont'd)
Automatic Start/Stop Feature 191
Change Engine Oil Light 113
Check and Service Engine Soon Light 104
Compartment Overview 229
Coolant 240
Coolant Temperature Warning Light 110
Exhaust 194
Oil Life System 238
Oil Pressure Light 112
Overheating 242
Reduced Power Light 115
Running While Parked 196
Engine Data 305
Equipment, Towing 223
Event Data Recorders 308
Exterior Lamp Controls 122
Exterior Lamps Off Reminder ...123

F

Filter
Diesel Fuel 247
Diesel Particulate 195
Filter,
Engine Air Cleaner 240
Fixed Mast Antenna 140
Flash-to-Pass 123
Flashers, Hazard Warning 124
Flat Tire 266
Changing 274
Floor Mats 294
Fluid
Automatic Transmission 239
Brakes 244
Power Steering 243
Washer 244
Fog Lamp Light, Rear 115
Fog Lamps
Bulb Replacement 250
Front 125
Rear 125
Folding Mirrors 39
Folding Seatback 50
Front Fog Lamp Light 115
Front Seats
Adjustment 47
Heated 50
Front Storage 86
Fuel 214
Additives 215
Fuel (cont'd)
Economy Driving 24
Economy Light 113
Filling a Portable Fuel Container 217
Filling the Tank 215
Gauge 101
Low Fuel Warning Light 114
Recommended 214
Water in Fuel Warning Light ...114
Fuel Economy Mode 198
Full-Size Spare Tire 280
Fuses
Engine Compartment Fuse Block 254
Fuses and Circuit Breakers ... 253
Instrument Panel Fuse Block 258

G

Gate Ajar Light 116
Gauges
Fuel 101
Odometer 100
Speedometer 100
Tachometer 101
Trip Odometer 100
Warning Lights and Indicators 97

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

General Information
Towing 217
Vehicle Care 227
Glove Box 86

H

Halogen Bulbs 249
Hands-Free Phone 154
Hazard Warning Flashers 124
Head Restraints 45
Active 46
Headlamp Range
Adjustment 123
Headlamps
Aiming 248
Automatic 124
Bulb Replacement 249
Daytime Running
Lamps (DRL) 123
Flash-to-Pass 123
High-Beam On Light 115
High/Low Beam Changer 123
Lamps On Reminder 115
Range Adjustment 123
Washer 95
Heated
Rear Seats 55
Heated Front Seats 50
Heated Mirrors 40
Heating and Air Conditioning ... 165
High-Beam On Light 115
Highway Hypnosis 179
Hill and Mountain Roads 179
Hill Start Assist (HSA) 203
Hood 228
Horn 93
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 58

I

Identification Plate 304
Ignition Positions 185, 187
Immobilizer
Light 114
Infants and Young Children,
Restraints 73
Information
Service 296
Instrument Cluster 98
Introduction 2, 128

J

Jump Starting 281

K

Key and Lock Messages 116
Keyless Entry
Remote (RKE) System 27, 29
Keys 25

L

Lamps
Daytime Running (DRL) 123
Dome 126
Exterior Controls 122
Exterior Lamps Off
Reminder 123
Front Fog 125
Headlamps, Front Turn
Signal, and Parking
Lamps 249
License Plate 252
Malfunction Indicator 104
On Reminder 115
Reading 127
Rear Fog 125
Side Turn Signal 252
Lap Belt 61
Lap-Shoulder Belt 59
LATCH System
Replacing Parts after a
Crash 83
LATCH, Lower Anchors and
Tethers for Children 78
Level Control
Automatic 206
Liftgate 33

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Light
Diesel Particulate Filter 111
Electronic Stability Control (ESC), Off 109
Pre-Heat 111
Lighting
Illumination Control 126
Lights
Airbag On-Off 103
Airbag Readiness 102
All-Wheel Drive 108
Antilock Brake System (ABS) Warning 107
Brake System Warning 106
Change Engine Oil 113
Charging System 104
Cruise Control 116
Descent Control System 108
Door Ajar 116
Electric Parking Brake 107
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning 110
Engine Oil Pressure 112
Flash-to-Pass 123
Fog Lamp, Rear 115
Front Fog Lamp 115
Fuel Economy 113
Gate Ajar 116
Lights (cont'd)
High-Beam On 115
High/Low Beam Changer 123
Immobilizer 114
Low Engine Oil Level 113
Low Fuel Warning 114
Reduced Engine Power 115
Safety Belt Reminders 102
Security 114
Service Vehicle Soon 106
Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning ... 109
Tire Pressure 111
Trailer Indicator 116
Ultrasonic Parking Sensor 109
Up-Shift 108
Water in Fuel Warning 114
Limited-Slip Differential 206
Locks
Automatic Door 32
Door 31
Power Door 32
Safety 32
Loss of Control 177
Low Engine Oil Level Light 113
Low Fuel Warning Light 114
Lower Anchors and Tethers for Children (LATCH System) 78
Lumbar Adjustment 48
Front Seats 48

M

Maintenance Schedule
Recommended Fluids and Lubricants 301
Scheduled Maintenance 296
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 104
Manual Mode 198
Manual Transmission 199
Fluid 240
Messages
Brake System 116
Key and Lock 116
Transmission 117
Vehicle 116
Mirrors
Automatic Dimming Rearview 40
Convex 39
Folding 39
Heated 40
Manual Rearview 40
Power 39

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Monitor System, Tire
Pressure 262
Multi-band Antenna 141

N

Net, Convenience 88
New Vehicle Break-In 185

O

Odometer 100
Trip 100
Off-Road
Recovery 177
Oil
Change Engine Oil Light 113
Engine 235
Engine Oil Life System 238
Low Engine Oil Level Light 113
Pressure Light 112
Older Children, Restraints 72
Operation
Infotainment 132
Outlets
Power 95
Overheating, Engine 242
Overview 131

P

Park
Shifting Into 193
Shifting Out of 193
Parking 194
Brake 201
Over Things That Burn 194
Ultrasonic Sensor Light 109
Parking Assist
Ultrasonic 211
Passenger Compartment Air
Filter 172
Performance 305
Personalization
Vehicle 119
Phone
Bluetooth 151
Hands-Free 154
Pictures and Movies 160, 162
Port
USB 141
Power
Door Locks 32
Mirrors 39
Outlets 95
Protection, Battery 127
Reduced Engine Light 115
Retained Accessory (RAP) ... 191
Power (cont'd)
Seat Adjustment 48
Steering Fluid 243
Windows 41
Pre-Heat Light 111
Pregnancy, Using Safety Belts ... 61
Pressure
Tire 307
Privacy
Radio Frequency
Identification (RFID) 309
Vehicle Data Recording 308

R

Radio
AM-FM 137
Radio Frequency
Identification (RFID) 309
Reading Lamps 127
Rear Climate Control System ... 170
Rear Fog Lamp Light 115
Rear Fog Lamps 125
Rear Seats 52
Heated 55
Rear Vision Camera (RVC) 209
Rear Window Washer/Wiper 94
Rearview Mirrors 40
Automatic Dimming 40
Reclining Seatbacks 48

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Recommended
Fuel 214
Recommended Fluids and
Lubricants 301
Recreational Vehicle Towing 284
Reduced Engine Power Light ... 115
Remote Keyless Entry
(RKE) System 27, 29
Replacement Bulbs 252
Replacement Parts
Airbags 71
Replacing Airbag System 71
Replacing LATCH System
Parts after a Crash 83
Replacing Safety Belt System
Parts after a Crash 62
Restraints
Where to Put 77
Retained Accessory
Power (RAP) 191
Ride Control Systems
Enhanced Traction
System (ETS) 206
Roads
Driving, Wet 178
Roof
Sunroof 43
Roof Rack System 89
Rotation, Tires 263
Running the Vehicle While
Parked 196

S

Safety Belts 57
Care 62
How to Wear Safety Belts
Properly 58
Lap Belt 61
Lap-Shoulder Belt 59
Reminders 102
Replacing after a Crash 62
Use During Pregnancy 61
Safety Locks 32
Safety System Check 62
Scheduled Maintenance 296
Sealant Kit, Tire 268
Seats
Adjustment, Front 47
Folding Seatback 50
Head Restraints 45
Heated Front 50
Heated, Rear 55
Lumbar Adjustment, Front 48
Power Adjustment, Front 48
Rear 52
Reclining Seatbacks 48
Third Row Seat 55
Seats (cont'd)
Underseat Storage 87
Securing Child Restraints 83, 85
Security
Light 114
Vehicle 35
Vehicle Alarm 35
Service
Accessories and
Modifications 227
Climate Control System 165
Doing Your Own Work 227
Engine Soon Light 104
Vehicle Soon Light 106
Service and Maintenance
Service Information 296
Service Information 296
Servicing the Airbag 70
Settings 156
Shifting
Into Park 193
Out of Park 193
Side Blind Zone Alert (SBZA) ... 212
Side Turn Signal Lamps 252
Signals, Turn and
Lane-Change 124
Spare Tire
Compact 280

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Specifications and Capacities 307
Speed Sensitive Power Steering (SSPS) Warning Light 109
Speedometer 100
Start Assist, Hills 203
Starting the Vehicle 188
Steering 176
Fluid, Power 243
Wheel Adjustment 92
Wheel Controls 92
Stoplamps and Back-up Lamps Bulb Replacement 251
Storage Areas
Cargo Cover 88
Cargo Management System 88
Center Console 87
Convenience Net 88
Front 86
Glove Box 86
Roof Rack System 89
Sunglasses 87
Underseat 87
Storage Compartments 86
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 274
Stuck Vehicle 181
Sun Visors 42
Sunglass Storage 87
Sunroof 43
Switches
Airbag On-Off 68
Symbols 2
System
Roof Rack 89

T

Tachometer 101
Taillamps
Bulb Replacement 251
Technical Data
Tire Pressure 307
Theft-Deterrent Systems 37
Third-Row Seats 55
Thread Depth 263
Tire Pressure 307
Tires 260
Buying New Tires 264
Chains 266
Changing 274
Compact Spare 280
Designations 260
Different Size 265
Full-Size Spare 280
If a Tire Goes Flat 266
Pressure Light 111
Tires (cont'd)
Pressure Monitor Operation . . 263
Pressure Monitor System 262
Rotation 263
Sealant and Compressor Kit 268
Sealant and Compressor Kit, Storing 274
Wheel Alignment and Tire Balance 265
Winter 260
Towing
Driving Characteristics 218
Equipment 223
General Information 217
Recreational Vehicle 284
Trailer 221
Trailer Sway Control (TSC) . . . 225
Vehicle 284
Traction
Limited-Slip Differential 206
Traction Control/Electronic Stability Control 204
Trailer
Sway Control (TSC) 225
Towing 221
Trailer Indicator Light 116

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Transmission
Automatic 196
Fluid, Automatic 239
Fluid, Manual 240
Messages 117
Triangle, Warning 89
Trip Computer 117
Trip Odometer 100
Turn and Lane-Change Signals 124
Turn Signal
Bulb Replacement 251

U

Ultrasonic Parking Assist 211
Ultrasonic Parking Sensor Light 109
Underseat Storage 87
Up-Shift Light 108
USB Port 141

V

Vehicle
Alarm System 35
Control 176
Load Limits 182
Messages 116
Personalization 119
Security 35
Vehicle (cont'd)
Service Soon Light 106
Starting 188
Towing 284
Vehicle Care
Storing the Tire Sealant and Compressor Kit 274
Tire Pressure 261
Vehicle Data Recording and Privacy 308
Vehicle Dimensions 306
Vehicle Identification Plate 304
Ventilation, Air 171
Visors 42

W

Warning
Brake System Light 106
Caution and Danger 2
Warning Lights, Gauges, and Indicators 97
Warning Triangle 89
Warnings
Hazard Flashers 124
Washer Fluid 244
Washer, Headlamps 95
Water in Fuel Warning Light 114
Weights
Curb 306
Wheels
Alignment and Tire Balance . . 265
Different Size 265
Where to Put the Restraint 77
Windows 41
Power 41
Windshield
Wiper/Washer 93
Winter
Driving 180
Winter Tires 260
Wiper Blade Replacement 247
Wipers
Rear Washer 94

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine

Downloaded from www.Manualslib.com manuals search engine